

■ ■ ■ ■ ■ krok za krokom k maturite ■ ■ ■ ■ ■

ANGLIČTINA

Gramatika



Krok za krokom k maturite – Angličtina – gramatika

Aj v tlačenej verzii.

Objednať si môžete na stránke
www.fragment.sk



Ďalšie e-knihy v edícii:

Krok za krokom k maturite – Matematika
Krok za krokom k maturite – Slovenský jazyk
Krok za krokom k maturite – Náuka o spoločnosti
Krok za krokom k maturite – Fyzika
Krok za krokom k maturite – Literatúra
Krok za krokom k maturite – Nemčina – gramatika
Krok za krokom k maturite – Angličtina – konverzácia, reálne
Krok za krokom k maturite – Prehľad matematiky a fyziky
Krok za krokom k maturite – Dejepis I.
Krok za krokom k maturite – Dejepis II.

Iva Dostálová

Krok za krokom k maturite – Angličtina – gramatika – e-kniha

Copyright © Fragment, 2012

Všetky práva sú vyhradené.
Nijaká časť tejto publikácie sa nesmie rozširovať
bez písomného súhlasu majiteľov práv.

Obsah

Úvod	4
1. Podstatné mená	5
2. Prídavné mená	17
3. Zámená	25
4. Číslovky	33
5. Pomocné slovesá	37
6. Modálne slovesá	41
7. Prítomný čas	49
8. Minulý čas	54
9. Predprítomný čas –	59
10. Predminulý čas –	65
11. Budúcnosť	68
12. Predbudúci čas	72
13. Krátke zisťovacie otázky	75
14. Slovesá netvoriace priebehový čas	76
15. Gerundium	78
16. Infinitív	82
17. Trpný rod	86
18. Rozkazovací spôsob	90
19. Do, make	91
20. Príslovky	92
21. Predložky	95
22. Slovosled	99
23. Otázka	103
24. Tvorenie slov predponami	107
25. Tvorenie slov príponami	110
26. Spájacie výrazy	115
27. Podmienkové vety	117
28. Časové vety	121
29. Želacie vety	123
30. Vzťažné vety	125
31. Účelové vety	129
32. Súslednosť časov	131
 Príloha	 135
Kľúč	137

Úvod

Táto učebnica gramatiky anglického jazyka je vhodná pre najširší okruh používateľov, najmä je však určená študentom stredných škôl ako doplňujúci materiál na upevnenie vedomostí základného gramatického učiva. Obsahuje 32 kapitol s jasným a stručným výkladom gramatiky potrebnej na úspešné zloženie maturitnej skúšky, ale aj na prípravu na prijímacie skúšky na vysoké školy. Na overenie získaných vedomostí prináša učebnica viac ako sto cvičení na precvičenie jednotlivých gramatických javov a 10 súhrnných testov priebežne preverujúcich vaše znalosti. Veríme, že táto príručka sa stane nenahraditeľným pomocníkom pri precvičovaní, opakovaní a prehľbovaní znalostí anglického jazyka a pri príprave na rozličné typy skúšok.

Veľa úspechov pri štúdiu vám prajú autorka a Vydavateľstvo Fragment

1. Podstatné mená

ROD

a) rovnaký výraz pre osoby oboch pohlaví

teacher	<i>učiteľ, učiteľka</i>
doctor	<i>doktor, doktorka</i>
student	<i>študent, študentka</i>
friend	<i>priateľ, priateľka</i>
reader	<i>čitateľ, čitatelka</i>
singer	<i>spevák, speváčka</i>
cousin	<i>bratranec, sesternica</i>

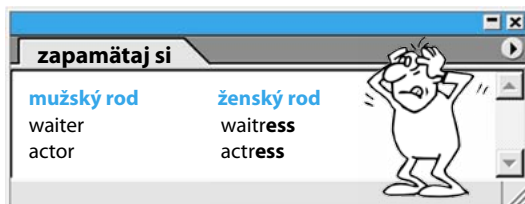


b) rozlíšenie pomocou male, female, boy, girl, man, woman a pod.

male teacher	<i>učiteľ</i>
female teacher	<i>učiteľka</i>
boyfriend	<i>priateľ</i>
girlfriend	<i>priateľka</i>

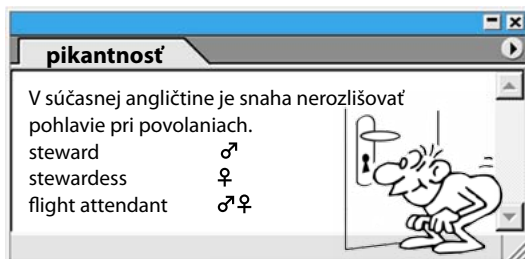
c) ženský rod utvorený z mužského rodu príponami

actor	actress	<i>herec, herečka</i>
emperor	empress	<i>cisár, cisárovná</i>
master	mistress	<i>pán, pani</i>
waiter	waitress	<i>čaušník, čaušnička</i>
lion	lioness	<i>lev, levica</i>
tiger	tigress	<i>tiger, tigrica</i>
steward	stewardess	<i>stevard, stevardka</i>
duke	duchess	<i>vojvoda, vojvodkyňa</i>
host	hostess	<i>hostiteľ, hostiteľka</i>
god	goddess	<i>boh, bohyňa</i>
hero	heroine	<i>hrdina, hrdinka</i>
tsar	tsarina	<i>cár, cárovná</i>



d) rozdielne výrazy

king	queen	<i>kráľ, kráľovná</i>
nephew	niece	<i>synovec, neter</i>
uncle	aunt	<i>strýko, teta</i>



Zvieratá a deti bez rozlíšenia pohlavia sú stredného rodu.

Keď hovoríme o konkrétnom dieťati alebo domácich maznáčikoch, použijeme príslušný rod.

a child and its needs *dieťa a jeho potreby*

Her child is only four, but he can read and write. *Jej dieťa má iba štyri roky, ale vie čítať a písať.*

Podstatné mená

Cvičenie 1.1. Doplňte do tabuľky ženský rod.

♂	♀
boyfriend	
lion	
hero	
emperor	
uncle	

♂	♀
waiter	
actor	
tsar	
duke	
headmaster	

MNOŽNÉ ČÍSLO

a) pravidelné

príponou -s

student students

príponou -es po vyslovených sykavkách a pri niektorých podstatných menách zakončených na -o

watch	watches	<i>hodinky</i>
church	churches	<i>kostol, kostoly</i>
class	classes	<i>trieda, triedy</i>
hero	heroes	<i>hrdina, hrdinovia</i>
Negro	Negroes	<i>černoch, černosí</i>
potato	potatoes	<i>zemiak, zemiaky</i>
tomato	tomatoes	<i>paradajka, paradajky</i>

-ale-

photo	photos	<i>fotka, fotky</i>
piano	pianos	<i>klavír, klavíry</i>
disco	discos	<i>diskotéka, diskotéky</i>

Pravopis

-y po spoluhláske -ies

lady ladies

-ale-

-y po samohláske sa nemení

boy boys

ťahák	
boy	boys
baby	babies
church	churches

b) nepravidelné

man	men	<i>muž, muži</i>
woman	women	<i>žena, ženy</i>
tooth	teeth	<i>zub, zuby</i>
foot	feet	<i>noha, nohy</i>
goose	geese	<i>hus, husy</i>
mouse	mice	<i>myš, myši</i>
louse	lice	<i>voš, vši</i>
child	children	<i>dieťa, deti</i>
ox	oxen	<i>vôl, voly</i>
medium	media	<i>prostriedok, prostriedky</i>
man	people	<i>človek, ľudia</i>
-ale-		
people	peoples	<i>národ, národy</i>

ťahák	
man	men
woman	women
child	children
foot	feet
tooth	teeth
mouse	mice

c) -f sa mení na -v

wife	wives	<i>manželka, manželky</i>
half	halves	<i>polovica, polovice</i>
knife	knives	<i>nôž, nože</i>
loaf	loaves	<i>bochník, bochníky</i>
shelf	shelves	<i>polica, police</i>
thief	thieves	<i>zlodej, zlodeji</i>
leaf	leaves	<i>list, listy</i>
wolf	wolves	<i>vlk, vlci/vlky</i>
life	lives	<i>život, životy</i>
scarf	scarves	<i>šál, šály</i>

- ale -

belief	beliefs	viera, vieri
chief	chiefs	náčelník, náčelníci
roof	roofs	strecha, strechy
proof	proofs	dôkaz, dôkazy
staff	staffs	zbor, zbory
cliff	cliffs	útes, útesy
dwarf	dwarfs	trpaslík, trpaslíci

hair	vlas, vlasy
experience	skúsenosť, skúsenosti
politics	politika
physics	fyzika

- nasleduje sloveso v jednotnom čísle: Tom's hair is black.
ďalej pozri nepočítateľné podstatné mená

ťahák

wife	wives
knife	knives
leaf	leaves
wolf	wolves




d) množné číslo je totožné s jednotným

fish	ryba, ryby
sheep	ovca, ovce
series	rad, rady
means	prostriedok, prostriedky
species	rod, rady
crossroads	križovatka, križovatky
salmon	losos, lososy
aircraft	lietadlo, lietadlá

- nasleduje sloveso v príslušnom čísle
a sheep is, sheep are

zaujímavosť

fish	ryba, ryby
fishes	rôzne druhy rýb




e) podstatné mená iba v jednotnom čísle (nepočítateľné)

advice	rada, rady
news	správa, správy
evidence	dôkaz, dôkazy
information	informácia
knowledge	znalosť, znalosti
progress	pokrok, pokroky
success	úspech, úspechy
luggage	batožina, batožiny

odkaz

Nepočítateľné podstatné mená existujú iba v jednotnom čísle. (Kapitola POČÍTEĽNOSŤ)

advice is
news is
luggage is
hair is
money is



f) podstatné mená iba v množnom čísle

clothes	šaty, odev
manners	správanie
contents	obsah
customs	colnica
surroundings	okolie
hops	chmeľ
riches	bohatstvo
goods	tovar
wages	mzda
scales	váhy
scissors	nožnice
Middle Ages	stredovek

- nasleduje sloveso v množnom čísle:
His manners are horrible.

g) hromadné podstatné mená (kolektíva)

army	armáda
audience	obecenstvo
government	vláda
police	polícia
company	spoločnosť
crew	posádka
team	mužstvo

Podstatné mená

- nasleduje sloveso v jednotnom čísle, keď máme na mysli kolektív ako celok, alebo v množnom čísle, keď máme na mysli jednotlivých členov kolektívu:


My family is really large. *Moja rodina je skutočne veľká.*

All the family were at home. *Celá rodina (všetci jej členovia) bola doma.*

poznámka

Niektorým anglickým podstatným menám v jednotnom čísle zodpovedajú v slovenčine podstatné mená, ktoré sú pomnožené.

newspaper	noviny
mouth	ústa
door	dvere
watch	hodinky
clock	hodiny



Cvičenie 1.2. Vytvorte množné číslo.

Jednotné číslo	Množné číslo
loaf	
tomato	
sheep	
disco	
watch	
boy	
family	
roof	
means	
grandchild	
Englishman	
foot	
hero	
medium	
aircraft	
leaf	
ox	
woman	
crossroads	
life	
kiss	
series	
goose	
chief	
box	

Cvičenie 1.3. Doplňte do viet sloveso *is* alebo *are*.

- The goods delivered on Mondays.
- Mathematics difficult for me.
- What the contents of this book?
- This animal a very rare species.
- A lot of species endangered.
- Which your favourite means of transport?
A bus or a tram?
- Vegetables healthy.
- The evening news at seven.
- This crossroads a very dangerous place.
- His manners horrible.
- Sheep friendly animals.
- No news good news.
- The customs closed.
- The surroundings of our house ugly.
- Your knowledge of English grammar very bad.

POČÍTATELNOSŤ

a) počítateľné

- tvoria jednotné aj množné číslo
- v jednotnom čísle musí byť člen *a* alebo *the*
- môžu sa používať s číslovkou


SG		PL	
a boy	(nejaký) chlapec	(some) boys	(nejakí) chlapci
the boy	ten chlapec	the boys	tí chlapci
		seven boys	sedem chlapcov
		how many boys?	koľko chlapcov?
		a few boys	pár chlapcov
		few boys	málo chlapcov
		a lot of boys	hľba chlapcov
		many boys	veľa chlapcov

b) nepočítateľné

- majú iba jednotné číslo
- sú bez člena *a/an*
- nemôžu sa používať s číslovkou

prečítaj si

Člen **a** vznikol z číslovky **one**, preto nemôže byť pred nepočítateľnými podstatnými menami.



SG	
(some) wine	<i>(nejaké) víno</i>
the wine	<i>to víno</i>
how much wine?	<i>koľko vína?</i>
a little wine	<i>trochu vína</i>
little wine	<i>málo vína</i>
a lot of wine	<i>mnoho vína</i>
much wine	<i>veľa vína</i>

ba) látkové podstatné mená

water	<i>voda</i>
blood	<i>krv</i>
sugar	<i>cukor</i>
salt	<i>soľ</i>
iron	<i>železo</i>
glass	<i>sklo</i>
wood	<i>drevo</i>

bb) abstraktné podstatné mená

love	<i>láska</i>
work	<i>práca</i>
importance	<i>dôležitosť</i>
time	<i>čas</i>
music	<i>hudba</i>
culture	<i>kultúra</i>
progress	<i>pokrok</i>

bc) ostatné podstatné mená

(pozri kapitolu MNOŽNÉ ČÍSLO e)

money	<i>peniaze</i>
hair	<i>vlasý</i>
fruit	<i>ovocie</i>

Keď chceme vyjadriť určité **množstvo** pri nepočítateľných podstatných menách, použijeme výrazy


an item of, a piece of, a bottle of, a kilo of atď.

water	a glass of water	<i>pohár vody</i>
work	a lot of work	<i>veľa práca</i>
bread	a loaf of bread	<i>peceň chleba</i>
	a slice of bread	<i>krajec chleba</i>
milk	a packet of milk	<i>škatuľa mlieka</i>
beer	a pint of beer	<i>pinta piva</i>
coca	a can of coca	<i>plechovka koly</i>
cheese	a piece of cheese	<i>kúsok syra</i>
flour	a kilo of flour	<i>kilo múky</i>

chocolate	a bar of chocolate	<i>tabuľka čokolády</i>
luggage	two pieces of luggage	<i>dva kusy batožiny</i>
evidence	three items of evidence	<i>tri dôkazy</i>

pikantnosť

How many **pieces of luggage** do you have?
Koľko kusov batožiny máte?



zapamätaj si

work **nepočítateľné**
I am looking for **work**.

job **počítateľné**
I am looking for **a job**.




Niektoré podstatné mená sú nepočítateľné v jednom význame, ale počítateľné v inom význame.

nepočítateľné		počítateľné	
glass	<i>sklo</i>	a glass	<i>pohár</i>
iron	<i>železo</i>	an iron	<i>žehlička</i>
paper	<i>papier</i>	a paper	<i>noviny</i>
work	<i>práca</i>	a work	<i>umelecké dielo</i>
room	<i>miesto</i>	a room	<i>miestnosť</i>
cake	<i>torta (zákusok)</i>	a cake	<i>celá torta</i>
experience	<i>skúsenosť</i>	an experience	<i>zážitok</i>

zaujímavosť

paper a paper
papier noviny

glass a glass
sklo pohár



Podstatné mená

Cvičenie 1.4. Rozdeľte podstatné mená z rámčeka na počítateľné a nepočítateľné.

importance	flour	flower	money	wine	water	bottle	bread	slice	loaf
cheese	music	piano	radio	luggage	suitcase	bag	newspaper	news	item

Počítateľné

.....

Nepočítateľné

.....

Cvičenie 1.5. Priradte k sebe nasledujúce výrazy.

- | | |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| 1) a glass of | A) tea |
| 2) a bar of | B) luggage |
| 3) three pieces of | C) beer |
| 4) a cup of | D) milk chocolate |
| 5) a can of | E) red wine |

Cvičenie 1.6. Doplňte do viet **a/an** alebo **some**.

- Can I have apple?
- Can I have apple juice?
- I'll have cheese.
- Will you have cheese sandwich?
- He bought wine, but I don't know if red or white.
- Have wine.
- We were in wine cellar last night.
- I'd like pint of lager.
- Would you like cake?
- Will you have more coffee?

PRIVLASTŇOVACÍ PÁD

a) životné 's

jedn. č.	boy's dog	chlapcov pes
	James' dog	
	James's dog	Jakubov pes
mn. č.	boys' dog	pes chlapcov
	children's dog	pes detí
	women's rights	práva žien

Keď je podstatné meno určené privlastňovacím pádom, nestojí pred ním člen.

Peter has a friend. Peter's friend is a lawyer.

Peter má priateľa. Petrov priateľ je právnik.

b) neživotné of

the colour of his eyes farba jeho očí

c) neživotné 's

today's newspaper	dnešné noviny
sun's rays	slnčné lúče
month's rate	mesačné nájomné
world's population	svetová populácia
women's clothes	dámske odevy

d) fráza

at my grandmother's	pri mojej babičke
at the baker's	u pekára
at St. Paul's	v Katedrále sv. Pavla
a two months' holiday	dvojmesačné prázdniny

Cvičenie 1.7. Preložte nasledujúce výrazy.

- Pavlov deduško
- dievčenské meno
- svadba Toma a Jenny
- zajtrajšie noviny
- izba môjho brata
- detské knihy
- syn pána Browna
- svetová populácia
- kancelária riaditeľa
- práva žien
- u deduška
- päťminútová prechádzka
- izba mojich sestier
- spálňa rodičov
- pánske odevy

ČLENY

a) Neurčitý člen a, an

- pred počítateľnými podstatnými menami v jednotnom čísle vo význame **nejaký**

a pred **vyslovenou spoluhláskou** →


a boy
a year

an pred **vyslovenou samohláskou** →

an apple
an hour
an ugly girl

zapamätaj si

Neurčitý člen **a** vznikol z číslovky one, preto **nemôže stáť** pred podstatným menom **v množnom čísle**.



as a matter of fact
as a result
in a hurry
one at a time

v skutočnosti
v dôsledku
v náhlivosti
raz za čas

b) Určitý člen the

- pred podstatnými menami v jednotnom i množnom čísle vo význame **ten**
the boy, the boys *ten chlapec, tí chlapci*

Použitie

- **pred podstatným menom, o ktorom sme už hovorili**
We have a garden. The garden is not big.
Máme záhradu. (Tá) Záhrada nie je veľká.
- **pred podstatným menom, ktoré je bližšie určené**
This is the man we met last summer.
To je ten muž, ktorého sme stretli vlni v lete.
- **pred tretím stupňom prídavných mien**
the highest mountain *najvyššia hora*
- **pred radovými číslovkami**
the third floor *tretie poschodie*
- **pred spodstatnenými prídavnými menami**
the poor *chudobní*
the old *starí*
- **pri osobách a veciach, ktoré sú jedinečné**
the Prime Minister *premiér*
the Earth *Zem*
the Sun *Slnko*
the capital *hlavné mesto*
- **pri označení zástupcu celého druhu**
The whale is a mammal. *Veľryba je cicavec.*
- **pri rodinách**
the Smiths *Smithovci*
- **pri národnostiach**
the English *Angličania*

Použitie

- **keď hovoríme o veci alebo o osobe prvý raz**
They have a big house. *Majú veľkú dom.*
- **vo väzbe there is**
There is a car in front of the house. *Pred domom je (nejaké) auto.*
- **v mennej časti prísudku pri slovesách be a become**
He is a doctor. *Je lekár.*
She became an actress. *Stala sa herečkou.*
- **namiesto číslovky one**
a hundred *(jedno) sto*

Frázy

twice a day	<i>dvakrát denne</i>
a couple	<i>pár</i>
a little	<i>trochu</i>
a lot of	<i>veľa, mnoho</i>
a few	<i>niekoľko (neveľa)</i>
to have a smoke	<i>zafajčiť si</i>
to have a rest	<i>odpočinúť si</i>
to have a look	<i>pozrieť sa (mrknúť sa)</i>
to have a chat	<i>porozprávať sa</i>
to give a lift	<i>zviezť autom</i>
half an hour	<i>pol hodina</i>

Frázy

go to the theatre	<i>ísť do divadla</i>
go to the cinema	<i>ísť do kina</i>
go to the doctor	<i>ísť k lekárovi</i>
listen to the radio	<i>počúvať rádio</i>
in the country(side)	<i>na dedine</i>
in the world	<i>na svete</i>
in the sky	<i>na oblohe</i>
the same as	<i>rovnaký ako, rovnako ako</i>


Podstatné mená

the only possibility
the city centre
at the sea
at the beginning
at the end
at the same time
play the violin

jediná možnosť
centrum mesta
pri mori
na začiatku
na konci
súčasne
hrať na husliach

zapamätaj si

There is **a table** in the kitchen.
V kuchyni je stôl.
The table is round.
(Ten) Stôl je gulatý.



c) Bezčlennosť

Použitie	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> keď je podstatné meno určené prívlastňovacím zámenom, prívlastňovacím pádom alebo ukazovacím zámenom 	<i>môj priateľ</i> <i>Pavlovo auto</i> <i>táto kniha</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> pri nepočítateľných podstatných menách 	<i>water</i> <i>voda</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> vedecké disciplíny a jazyky 	<i>chemistry</i> <i>angličtina</i> <i>chémia</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> názvy dní, mesiacov, období a sviatkov 	<i>Sunday</i> <i>March</i> <i>summer</i> <i>Easter</i> <i>Christmas</i> <i>New Year's Eve</i> <i>nedeľa</i> <i>marec</i> <i>leto</i> <i>Veľká noc</i> <i>Vianoce</i> <i>Silvester</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> pomenovania denných jedál 	<i>breakfast</i> <i>lunch</i> <i>dinner</i> <i>– ale –</i> <i>a delicious dinner</i> <i>raňajky</i> <i>obed</i> <i>večera</i> <i>vynikajúca večera</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> mená osôb 	<i>John</i> <i>Mr Brown</i> <i>Ján</i> <i>pán Brown</i>

Použitie

• názvy športov a hier

tennis *tenis*
chess *šachy*

• choroby

flu *chrípka*

zapamätaj si

to play the piano *hrať na klavíri*
to play football *hrať futbal*



Niektoré podstatné mená sa môžu používať aj s určitým členom: I was there on Sunday. *Bol som tam v nedeľu.*
The Sunday before Christmas was sunny.
Nedeľa pred Vianocami bola slnečná.

• hospital, school, prison, church: Keď hovoríme o inštitúcii, sú tieto podstatné mená **bez člena**. Keď hovoríme o budove, používame člen **the**.


go to hospital	<i>ísť do nemocnice (ako pacient)</i>
go to the hospital	<i>ísť do nemocnice (na návštevu)</i>
go to church	<i>ísť do kostola (ako veriaci)</i>
go to the church	<i>ísť do kostola (prezrieť si ho)</i>
go to prison	<i>ísť do väzenia (ako väzeň)</i>
go to the prison	<i>ísť do väzenia (na návštevu)</i>
go to school	<i>ísť do školy (ako žiak)</i>
go to the school	<i>ísť do školy (na triednu schôdzku)</i>

Frázy

to go by bus	<i>viezť sa autobusom</i>
to go to bed	<i>ísť spať</i>
to go on foot	<i>ísť peši</i>
at night	<i>v noci</i>
by day	<i>cez deň</i>
by heart	<i>naspamäť</i>
arm in arm	<i>ruka v ruke</i>
face to face	<i>zoči-voči</i>
from top to toe	<i>od hlavy po päty</i>

vysvetlivka

There is **a bus** in front of the post office.
The bus is green.
Let's **take a bus**.
We went there **by bus**.
Take **bus number two**.



Cvičenie 1.8. Doplňte do viet členy **a/an, the** tam, kde treba.

- 1) Have you got brother or sister?
- 2) It is written at top of page.
- 3) There is bookcase in corner of room.
- 4) They live in south-west of England.
- 5) Browns live in east Scotland.
- 6) There is someone at door.
- 7) James was taken to hospital.
- 8) Are you tired? Go to bed, then.
- 9) Moon revolves round Earth.
- 10) Who was first owner of car?
- 11) Jackie has round face with big mouth.
- 12) Jill was wet from top to toe.
- 13) only way to cope with it is talking about it as much as possible.
- 14) This morning I had breakfast in hurry.
- 15) Let's go to cinema, shall we?
- 16) Jack arrived at same time as me.
- 17) Yesterday she went to school by bus, but today she had to take taxi so that she wouldn't be late.
- 18) Jim can play guitar and he is good hockey player as well.
- 19) What do you think is better -living in town or in country?
- 20) Paris is capital of France.
- 21) Jeremy went to hospital to visit his grandfather.
- 22) I like people I work with.
- 23) When I went to school, we had to learn a lot of things by heart.
- 24) Who is tallest boy in your class?
- 25) Could you pass me sugar, please?
- 26) I love Christmas but I don't like Easter at all.
- 27) English are famous for their politeness.
- 28) The ticket is £ 5 for unemployed.
- 29) Let's have rest and go to sea.
- 30) It was delicious breakfast but dinner yesterday was disgusting.

d) Člen pri zemepisných názvoch a názvoch inštitúcií

Bez člena	
• názvy krajín v jednotnom čísle a bez všeobecného slova (republic, kingdom) v názve	
Great Britain	Veľká Británia
Canada	Kanada
• svetadiely	
Europe	Európa
Asia	Ázia
• ulice	
Fleet Sreet	
Fifth Avenue	
• mestá	
Prague	
London	
– ale –	
The Hague	
• námestia	
Charles Square	
Piccadilly Circus	
• parky	
Hyde Park	
Victoria Park	
• letiská	
Heathrow	
Kennedy Airport	
• jazerá	
Lake Ontario	
Lake Michigan	
• ostrovy v jednotnom čísle	
Bermuda	
Corfu	
• jednotlivé vrchy	
Mount Everest	
Kilimanjaro	
• budovy a inštitúcie s vlastným menom v názve	
Westminster Abbey	
Buckingham Palace	
Lloyds Bank	
• kostoly a katedrály	
St. Paul's (Cathedral)	

Podstatné mená

The

- **krajiny v množnom čísle a so všeobecným slovom (republic, kingdom) v názve**

the Netherlands
the Slovak Republic
the United Kingdom of Great Britain
and Northern Ireland

- **moria, oceány, kanály**

the Atlantic
the Black Sea
the Suez Canal

- **rieky**

the Danube
the Thames

- **pohoria a horské pásma**

the Rocky Mountains
the Alps

- **súostrovia**

the Shetlands
the Bahamas

- **názvy lodí**

the Belfast
the Titanic

- **púšte**

the Sahara (Desert)
the Great Desert

- **svetové strany**

the south
the north
the west
the east
the Far East
– **ale** –
North Africa

- **politické strany**

the Social Democracy
the Liberal Party

- **kluby, reštaurácie, hotely**

the Green Lion
the Hilton

- **kiná, divadlá**

the ABC Cinema
the National Theatre

- **galérie, múzeá**

the Tate (Gallery)
the National Museum

zapamätaj si

Člen **the** je pri názvoch krajín v **množnom čísle** a krajín, ktoré majú v názve všeobecné slovo **state, republic, kingdom**. Pri ostatných názvoch krajín člen nie je.

The United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland
Great Britain
England
The United States of America
California



zapamätaj si

Člen **the** je pri názvoch **pohorí** a **súostrovií**, ale pri názvoch jednotlivých vrchov a ostrovov nie je.

The Shetlands Corsica
The Alps Mount Everest



ťahák

the south
South America



zapamätaj si

Svetové strany sú vždy s členom **the** a predložkou **in**.
in the west na západe



poznámka

Pamätihodnosti v Londýne:

Buckingham Palace
Westminster Abbey
St. Paul's Cathedral
The Houses of Parliament
The Tower of London



The

• noviny

the Times
the Daily Mirror

• pred skratkami

the UN
the BBC

• pri výrazoch s of

the Houses of Parliament
the Tower of London
the Bank of England
the University of London

Cvičenie 1.9. Doplňte do výrazov člen **the** tam, kde treba.

- 1) United Kingdom
- 2) Sahara Desert
- 3) Lake Ontario
- 4) Buckingham Palace
- 5) Oxford Street
- 6) Indian Ocean
- 7) Swiss Alps
- 8) Danube
- 9) USA
- 10) Heathrow
- 11) Guardian
- 12) Europe
- 13) Westminster Abbey
- 14) Houses of Parliament
- 15) National Theatre
- 16) English Channel
- 17) Netherlands
- 18) Etna
- 19) Canary Islands
- 20) Brave Lion Pub
- 21) Rocky Mountains
- 22) Tower
- 23) Lloyds Bank
- 24) Middle East
- 25) Conservative party
- 26) UN
- 27) Northern America
- 28) Bank of England
- 29) Mediterranean
- 30) Trafalgar Square

Test 1

- 1) A woman whose job is to bring food to costumers at their tables in a restaurant is a
A) waiter B) waitress C) waiters D) servant
- 2) We had paid all our debts and there still some money left.
A) are B) were C) was D) –
- 3) My grandmother is a believer. She goes to church every Sunday.
A) a B) the C) an D) –
- 4) National Gallery is on Trafalgar Square.
A) The, the B) –, – C) The, – D) –, the
- 5) We have been waiting here for
A) half an hour B) half the hour
C) half a hour D) half hour
- 6) Vegetables healthy.
A) The, is B) The, are C) –, is D) –, are
- 7) Rocky Mountains are in west of North America.
A) The, the, the B) –, –, –
C) The, the, – D) The, –, –
- 8) What beautiful weather!
A) – B) a C) the D) is
- 9) There is ugly man standing at end of street.
A) a, a, a B) the, the, the
C) an, the, the D) an, the, a
- 10) You can either go by tram or take taxi.
A) –, a B) a, a C) –, – D) a, –
- 11) Can you pass me salt? It's on the table.
A) – B) a C) some D) the
- 12) Where yesterday's newspaper? on the shelf.
A) are, They are B) is, It is
C) are, It is D) is, They are

Podstatné mená

- 13) Judith is looking for job, but it's difficult because she hasn't got enough
- A) a, experience B) -, experience
C) a, experiences D) -, experiences
- 14) Let's have dinner at Tokyo Restaurant.
- A) -, the B) a, - C) a, the D) -, -
- 15) Hyde Park is one of largest parks in world.
- A) The, the, the B) -, -, -
C) -, the, the D) -, the, -
- 16) We had a lot of
- A) luggages B) luggage
C) suitcase D) piece of luggage
- 17) Middle East is the area from eastern Mediterranean to Iran.
- A) The, the, the B) -, -, -
C) The, the, - D) The, -, the
- 18) The underground is by far most reliable of transport.
- A) the, mean B) the, means C) a, mean D) a, means
- 19) door painted red.
- A) A, have been B) The, have been
C) The, has been D) A, has been
- 20) Money kept at Lloyds Bank safe.
- A) the, are B) the, is C) -, are D) -, is
- 21) have a son. He is lawyer.
- A) The Brown's, a B) The Browns', a
C) Browns', a D) The Browns, a
- 22) English Channel separates England from France.
- A) -, -, - B) The, the, the
C) -, the, the D) The, -, -
- 23) Washington is capital of United States of America.
- A) the, the B) a, - C) the, - D) a, the
- 24) English is spoken all over world.
- A) The, the B) -, - C) The, - D) -, the
- 25) How many of bread shall I buy?
- A) loaf B) loaves C) loaf's D) loavs

2. Prídavné mená


STUPŇOVANIE

a) príponami -er, the -est

high	higher	the highest
narrow	narrower	the narrowest

pikantnosť

Prídavné meno old sa v prípade členov tej istej rodiny môže stupňovať aj takto:
old elder the eldest
Po tomto tvare musí vždy nasledovať podstatné meno.
My elder brother is 20.
Môj starší brat má 20 rokov.



- jednoslabičné a dvojslabičné zakončené na -y, -ow, -er, -el, -le

Zmeny v pravopise


- Koncové -e vypadáva
large larger the largest
- Koncové -y sa po spoluhláske mení na -i
silly sillier
Sú však výnimky:
shy shyer the shyest
sly slyer the slyest
- Zdvojenie koncovkej spoluhlásky
big bigger the biggest

! Prídavné mená zakončené na -y sa stupňujú príponami, ale príslovky zakončené na -ly sa stupňujú opisným spôsobom:

friendly friendlier the friendliest
slowly more slowly most slowly

zapamätaj si

big bigger the biggest
happy happier the happiest



b) opisným spôsobom more, the most

boring	more boring	the most boring
--------	-------------	-----------------

- dvoj- a viacslabičné

Tretí stupeň prídavných mien s neurčitým členom mení význam.

It was **the most amusing** play. Bola to tá **najzábavnejšia** hra.

It was **a most amusing** play. Bola to **veľmi zaujímavá** hra.

Niektoré prídavné mená sa môžu stupňovať príponami aj opisným spôsobom.

common, handsome, cruel, quiet, modern

c) nepravidelné stupňovanie

good dobrý	better lepší	the best najlepší
well dobré	better lepšie	the best najlepšie
bad zlý	worse horší	the worst najhorší
little malý málo	less menší menej	the least najmenší najmenej
much veľa	more viac	the most najviac
many veľa	more viac	the most najviac
late nedávny neskoro	later nasledujúci neskôr	the latest najnovší najneskôr
late	latter ten druhý	the last posledný
far vzdialený daleko	farther (miestne) vzdialenejší ďalej	the farthest najvzdialenejší najďalej

Prídavné mená

vysvetlivka

the latest book *najnovšia kniha*
the last bus *poslední autobus*




far	further <i>další (v poradí) ďalej</i>	the furthest <i>najvzdialenejší najďalej</i>
------------	---	--

Frázy

at least	<i>aspoň, prinajmenšom</i>
at last	<i>konečne</i>
not in the least	<i>ani v najmenšom</i>
last but not least	<i>v neposlednom rade</i>
the former, the latter	<i>ten skôr menovaný, ten druhý</i>

zapamätaj si

the most people *najviac ľudí*
most people *väčšina ľudí*




the latest news	<i>najnovšie správy</i>
at most	<i>nanajvýš</i>
most teachers	<i>väčšina učiteľov</i>

Výrazy

- **as – as** *taký/á/é ako*
He is **as** old **as** his cousin.
- **not as – as** *nie taký/á/é ako*
He is **not as** old **as** his cousin.
- **not so – as** *nie taký/á/é ako*
He is **not so** old **as** his cousin.
- **than** *ako*
He is older **than** his cousin.
You are taller **than** me. = You are taller **than** I am.

zapamätaj si

than *ako*
as – as *taký/á/é ako*
the, the *čím, tým*



- **the, the** *čím, tým*
The more you have, **the more** you want.
Čím viac máš, tým viac chceš.

Zosilňovanie 2. a 3. stupňa

much, far, a lot	<i>omnoho</i>
even	<i>ešte</i>
by far	<i>zďaleka</i>
very	<i>veľmi</i>

He is **by far the best** student of all.
Je zďaleka najlepším študentom zo všetkých.
It is **even worse** than we expected.
Je to ešte horšie, ako sme čakali.

Zoslabovanie 1. a 2. stupňa

less	<i>menej</i>
a bit	<i>trochu, o niečo</i>
a little	<i>trochu, o niečo</i>
a little bit	<i>trochu, o niečo</i>
slightly	<i>trochu, o niečo</i>

Do it **a little bit better**.
Urob to o niečo lepšie.
He is **less hard working** than he used to be.
Je menej usilovný, ako býval.
I am going **slightly mad**.
Trochu mi šibe.

Cvičenie 2.1. Vystupňujte nasledujúce prídavné mená.

ADJECTIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
big
large
lazy
crowded
busy
far
sad
fat
amusing
little
bad
lucky
contented
lovely
easy
thin
good
dangerous
safe
advanced
hot
often
wide
narrow
tiring
funny
slow
interesting
near
wet

Cvičenie 2.2. Doplňte do viet výrazy **as – as** alebo **than**. Vety opište.

- 1) Jim is older Paul.
Jim is older than Paul.
- 2) Fiona isn't tall Suzy.
.....
- 3) Are you good at English your brother?
.....?
- 4) I don't have many friends you.
.....
- 5) Jeremy is younger his wife.
.....
- 6) A cheetah is faster a lion.
.....

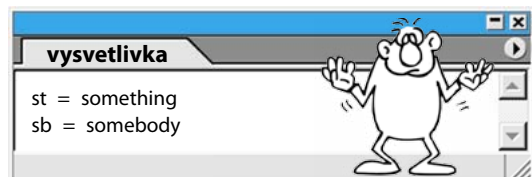
Prídavné mená

- 7) Was it bad you expected?
.....
- 8) Can Paul play squash well Charles?
.....
- 9) We are busy last year.
.....
- 10) This house is more expensive than one.
.....

Cvičenie 2.3. Preložte nasledujúce vety.

- 1) Bolo to oveľa horšie, ako sme čakali.
.....
- 2) Aké sú najnovšie správy?
.....
- 3) Môj brat je o trochu šťihlejší ako moja sestra.
.....
- 4) Si rovnako dobrý spevák ako tvoj otec.
.....
- 5) Čím dlhšie hovoríte, tým menej rozumieme.
.....
- 6) Čím skôr, tým lepšie.
.....
- 7) To je zďaleka najlepší vtíp, aký som kedy počul.
.....
- 8) Naše nové auto je omnoho rýchlejšie, ale menej pohodlné.
.....
- 9) Si skutočne taký dobrý brankár, ako hovoria?
.....
- 10) Nebuď taký hlúpy ako ona.
.....

PRÍDAVNÉ MENÁ A PREDLOŽKY



AT	
good at st	shocked at (by) st
excellent at st	surprised at (by) st
brilliant at st	astonished at (by) st
bad at st	amazed at (by) st
hopeless at st	
I was shocked at what he had done. <i>Bol som šokovaný tým, čo urobil.</i>	


OF	
proud of st	kind of sb
aware of st	rude of sb
conscious of st	stupid of sb
accused of st	suspicious of st, sb
tired of st	ashamed of st, sb
afraid of st, sb	capable of st
terrified of st, sb	incapable of st
scared of st, sb	typical of sb
jealous of st, sb	independent of
envious of st, sb	fond of
nice of sb	
They were jealous of my success. <i>Žiarlili na moje úspechy.</i>	

vysvetlivka

Niektoré anglické prídavné mená s predložkou **sa** do slovenčiny prekladajú slovesnou väzbou.

I am afraid of spiders.
Bojím sa pavúkov.


She has nothing to be ashamed of.
Nemá sa za čo hanbiť.



TO	
engaged to sb	good to sb
married to sb	nice to sb
similar to st, sb	cruel to sb
addicted to st	
Be nice to her. <i>Buď k nej milý.</i>	

zapamätaj si

It's **nice of** you. *Je to od teba milé.*
Be **nice to** me. *Buď ku mne milý.*



WITH	
fed up with st, sb	pleased with st
angry with sb	disappointed with st
crowded with sb	satisfied with st
bored with st, sb	delighted with st
I am fed up with it! <i>Už toho mám dosť!</i>	


FOR	
famous for st	responsible for st, sb
sorry for sb	
Who is responsible for it? <i>Kto je za to zodpovedný?</i>	

ABOUT	
angry about st	happy about st
worried about st	nervous about st
excited about st	sorry about st
Why is she worried about it? <i>Prečo sa tým znepokojuje?</i>	

ON	
keen on st, sb	dependent on st, sb
He isn't keen on sports. <i>Nemá rád šport.</i>	

zaujímavosť

angry about st *hnevať sa pre niečo*
angry with sb *hnevať sa na niekoho*



IN	
interested in st	
Jeff is interested in languages. <i>Jeff sa zaujíma o jazyky.</i>	

Niektoré prídavné mená sa viažu s viacerými predložkami.

He is nice to his mother. *Je milý k svojej matke.*
It is nice of him. *Je to od neho milé.*

Prídavné mená

I am sorry about it. *Je mi to ľúto.*
 I feel sorry for him. *Je mi ho ľúto.*
 I am sorry for disturbing you. *Ospravedlňujem sa, že som vás vyrušil.*

Don't be angry about it! *Nerozčuľuj sa preto!*
 Don't be angry with me! *Nehnevaj sa na mňa!*

Cvičenie 2.4. Doplňte do viet predložky.

- Why did you do that? It was stupid you.
- You should be aware it.
- She said she was fed up his behaviour.
- He is tired doing the same job every day.
- Do you know that James is engaged. an Australian girl?
- Parents are always proud their children.
- When he is drunk he is capable saying rude things.
- There is nothing to be ashamed it.
- They don't seem worried the situation.
- We were amazed how calm she was.
- He is always suspicious my intentions.
- I am sorry her. She has so many health problems.
- Stop being angry me.
- The streets were crowded people.
- She is getting married next month. She is excited it.
- Samantha is jealous her sister's good look.
- The film was horrible. We were really disappointed it.
- I wish I were independent my parents.
- This car is similar mine.
- Ben is addicted drugs.

SLOVOSLED

Keď je vo vete viac prídavných mien, uvádzajú sa najskôr prídavné mená vyjadrujúce subjektívny názor, potom prídavné mená konkrétne.

	názor	veľkosť	vek	tvar
a	nice	big	old	round
farba	pôvod	materiál	účel	podst. meno
black	Chinese	wooden	dining	table

Cvičenie 2.5. Uvedte prídavné mená v správnom poradí.

- a BLACK/SPORTS/NEW car
.....
- a(n) OLD/FRENCH/INTERESTING book
.....
- a GREEN/BIG/PLASTIC bag
.....
- a CHINA/SMALL/WHITE cup
.....
- a(n) JAPANESE/WRITING/OLD desk
.....
- a(n) SWISS/WOODEN/ANTIQUE clock.
.....
- a GLASS/MODERN/RECTANGULAR table
.....
- a BIG/YELLOW/FUNNY umbrella
.....
- a(n) TALL/YOUNG/INTERESTING man
.....
- CURLY/DARK/LONG hair
.....

PRÍDAVNÉ MENÁ ZAKONČENÉ NA -ED A -ING

V angličtine sa niektoré prídavné mená tvoria zo sloviess príponami -ed a -ing. Ide v podstate o prídavné mená, vo vete sa však správajú ako prídavné mená.

surprise <i>prekvapiť</i>	surprising <i>prekvapivý</i>	surprised <i>prekvapený</i>
bore <i>nudiť</i>	boring <i>nudný</i>	bored <i>unudený</i>
confuse <i>miasť</i>	confusing <i>mätúci</i>	confused <i>zmätený</i>
tire <i>unavovať</i>	tiring <i>únavný</i>	tired <i>unavený</i>
disappoint <i>sklamať</i>	disappointing <i>neuspokojujúci</i>	disappointed <i>sklamaný</i>
shock <i>šokovať</i>	shocking <i>šokujúci</i>	shocked <i>šokovaný</i>
embarrass <i>dostať do rozpakov</i>	embarrassing <i>trápny</i>	embarrassed <i>v rozpakoch</i>
amuse <i>baviť</i>	amusing <i>zábavný</i>	amused <i>pobavený</i>

amaze žasnúť	amazing úžasný	amazed užasnutý
annoy otravovať	annoying otravný	annoyed otrávený
excite vzrušiť	exciting vzrušujúci	excited vzrušený
exhaust vyčerpať	exhausting vyčerpávajúci	exhausted vyčerpaný
disgust znechutiť	disgusting nechutný	disgusted znehutený
interest zaujímať	interesting zaujímavý	interested zaujatý

At the end of his confusing speech we were really confused.
You look surprised. Was the news really so surprising?


zapamätaj si

surprised

prekvapený

surprising

prekvapivý



táhák


bored

len osoby

boring

osoby aj veci

I was bored. Nudil som sa.
Jack is so boring. Jack je taký nudný.
The film was boring. Ten film bol nudný.



Cvičenie 2.6. Doplňte do viet správny tvar slov z rámčeka.

confuse	confuse	surprise	bore	excite	disappoint	amaze	disgust	interest	tire
---------	---------	----------	------	--------	------------	-------	---------	----------	------

- He studied hard, so it is not he passed the exam.
- They looked, they didn't understand it at all.
- Are you still so about your new job?
- She is so dirty and ugly, it's
- Is he in anything?
- We loved it, it was simply
- Jim was after the long journey.
- The book was I expected it to be much better.
- I need a change. I am with my job.
- I have three friends of the same name-Paul. Sometimes it is a little

Test 2

- Peter is student all.
A) worst, of B) the worst, from
C) the worst, of D) worst, from
- Is it better you thought?
A) that B) then C) it D) than
- My brother is hopeless remembering names.
A) in B) at C) from D) of
- His lecture was a little We didn't understand it.
A) confusing B) confused C) amazing D) amazed
- They bought a(n) car last month.
A) black new estate B) estate new black
C) new black estate D) new estate black
- You look What has happened?
A) surprise B) surprising C) surprises D) surprised
- The store will be closed until notice.
A) farther B) latest C) further D) last
- When does bus to Oxford leave?
A) last B) the last C) latest D) the latest

Prídavné mená

- 9) The book was than the film.
 A) much more interesting B) much interesting
 C) more much interesting D) less more interesting
- 10) The weather in the UK is than on the Continent.
 A) little wetter B) little weter
 C) a little weter D) a little wetter
- 11) Jill is actress ever.
 A) far the best B) far best
 C) by far best D) by far the best
- 12) the children got the teacher got.
 A) The noisier, the angrier B) Noisier, angrier
 C) The more noisy, the more angry
 D) More noisier, more angry
- 13) Paul is jealous his friend who is more successful.
 A) of B) at C) to D) from
- 14) It was stupid you to do that again.
 A) from B) of C) to D) with
- 15) Do you know the girl over there?
 A) pretty young tall B) young pretty tall
 C) tall pretty young D) pretty tall young
- 16) How I couldn't remember her name.
 A) embarrassed B) embarrassing
 C) exhausting D) exhausted
- 17) I have two brothers, Jim and Fred. is 20, is 25.
 A) The first, the second B) The former, the later
 C) The former, the latter D) The first, the later
- 18) I expected more. I was slightly with it.
 A) disappointing B) disappointed
 C) ashamed D) scared
- 19) Peter's guitar is than John's.
 A) much more loud B) much loud
 C) more loud D) much louder
- 20) It will be expensive. It will cost £ 1,000
 A) at least B) at the least
 C) at most D) at the most

3. Zámená

a) OSOBNÉ

	podmetový tvar	predmetový tvar
ja	I	me
ty	you	you
on	he	him
ona	she	her
ono	it	it
my	we	us
vy	you	you
oni	they	them

Where are **they**?

Kde sú?

I cannot see **them**.

Nevidím ich.



b) PRIVLASTŇOVACIE

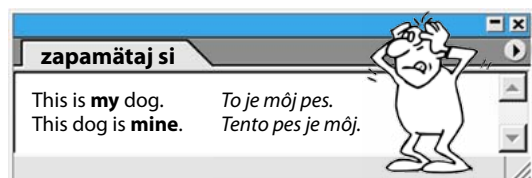
	nesamostatne stojace	samostatne stojace
I	my	mine
you	your	yours
he	his	his
she	her	hers
it	its	its
we	our	ours
you	your	yours
they	their	theirs

This is **my** book.

Toto je moja kniha.

This book is **mine**.

Táto kniha je moja.



Samostatne stojace prívlastňovacie zámená sa používajú aj v nasledujúcich frázach:

one of my friends	=	a friend of mine
one of your friends	=	a friend of yours
one of his friend	=	a friend of his
one of her friends	=	a friend of hers
one of our friends	=	a friend of ours
one of your friends	=	a friend of yours
one of our friends	=	a friend of ours
one of their friends	=	a friend of theirs

Pozor na častú chybu!

a friend of ~~him~~ his

Cvičenie 3.1. Doplňte do viet osobné alebo prívlastňovacie zámená.

- I have known Lucy for ages but I have never met brother.
- Does this luggage belong to the Parkers? Yes, it is
- Do you know Jack and Jill? No, I have never met
- We need your help. Can you help?
- We are giving a housewarming party next week and we are going to invite all friends.
- Is this sweater Tom's? No, it isn't
- Cambridge is famous for university.
- This is not my bag. This bag isn't
- I left my umbrella at home. Can you lend me?
- I am afraid we can't help you. It's your problem, not

Cvičenie 3.2. Opište nasledujúce vety. Použite samostatne stojace prívlastňovacie zámená.

- I saw one of your friends last night.
I saw a friend of yours last night.
- Jim took one of my pens by mistake.
.....
- One of their fans called them a week ago.
.....
- We were there with three of our friends.
.....

Zámená

5) Lucas is having dinner with one of his girlfriends.

.....
.....

c) UKAZOVACIE

jednotné číslo	množné číslo
this <i>tento</i> <i>táto</i> <i>toto</i>	these <i>títo</i> <i>tieto</i> <i>tieto</i>
that <i>tamten</i> <i>tamtá</i> <i>tamto</i>	those <i>tamtí</i> <i>tamtie</i> <i>tamtie</i>

This car is blue.

Toto auto je modré.

That car is white.

Tamto auto je biele.

These houses are old.

Tieto domy sú staré.

Those houses are new.

Tamtie domy sú nové.

tahák

jednotné číslo this boy that girl	množné číslo these boys those girls
--	--

zaujímavosť

Zámeno this sa používa pri telefonovaní a pri predstavovaní.

Hello, this is James.
Haló, tu je James.
 Paula, this is my friend Sarah.
Pavla, toto je moja priateľka Sára.

Cvičenie 3.3. Dajte nasledujúce vety do množného čísla.

- 1) Do you like this house?
..... ?
- 2) Is that book yours?
..... ?
- 3) Excuse me, is this your suitcase?
..... ?
- 4) This man is weird.
.....

5) That girl is my best friend.

.....

d) ZVRATNÉ A ZDÔRAZŇOVACIE -SELF

<i>ja</i>	<i>I</i>	myself
<i>ty</i>	<i>you</i>	yourself
<i>on</i>	<i>he</i>	himself
<i>ona</i>	<i>she</i>	herself
<i>ono</i>	<i>it</i>	itself
<i>my</i>	<i>we</i>	ourselves
<i>vy</i>	<i>you</i>	yourselves
<i>oni</i>	<i>they</i>	themselves

1. zvrtné

- zodpovedajú slovenskému *sa, si*

hurt oneself	<i>zraniť sa</i>
excuse oneself	<i>ospravedlniť sa</i>
introduce oneself	<i>predstaviť sa</i>
enjoy oneself	<i>zabávať sa</i>
kill oneself	<i>zabiť sa</i>
shoot oneself	<i>zastreliť sa</i>
cut oneself	<i>porezať sa</i>
burn oneself	<i>spáliť sa</i>
think to oneself	<i>pomyslieť si</i>
say to oneself	<i>povedať si</i>
make oneself understood	<i>dorozumieť sa</i>
help oneself	<i>poslúžiť si (ponúknuť sa)</i>

She smiled and thought to **herself** what a beautiful day.

Usmiala sa a pomyslela si, aký krásny deň.

Help **yourselves**, children.

Ponúknite sa, deti.

– **ale** –

zvrtné slovesá v slovenčine bez self v angličtine

wash	<i>umývať sa</i>
comb	<i>česať sa</i>
shave	<i>holiť sa</i>
feel	<i>cítiť sa</i>
dress	<i>obliecť sa</i>
turn	<i>otočiť sa</i>
change	<i>zmeniť sa</i>

happen	stať sa
behave	správať sa
close	zatvárať sa
open	otvárať sa
hide	schovať sa
laugh	smiať sa
smile	usmievať sa
concentrate	sústrediť sa
relax	odpočinúť si
meet	stretnúť sa

He got up, washed and shaved.

Vstal, umyl sa a oholil sa.

2. zdôrazňovacie

- zodpovedajú slovenskému *sám, osobne*
- dávajú sa za zdôrazňovaný vetný člen alebo na koniec vety

He did it **himself**. Urobil to sám. (osobne)

He **himself** did it. On sám (osobne) to urobil.

– **ale** –

He was there alone. Bol tam sám. (bez niekoho iného)

vysvetlivka

jednotné číslo **množné číslo**

-self **-selves**

Help **yourself**. Help **yourselves**.

Ponúkni sa. Ponúknite sa.



Cvičenie 3.4. Doplňte do tabuľky vzrátné zámená.

I	
you	
he	
she	
it	
we	
you	
they	

e) RECIPROČNÉ (VZÁJOMNÉ) EACH OTHER, ONE ANOTHER

- zodpovedajú slovenskému *sa, si* v zmysle vzájomne

We know **each other**. Poznáme sa. (vzájomne)

– **ale** –


We know **ourselves**. Poznáme sa. (sami seba)

poznámka

each other = one another

James and Pet don't like **each other**. =
= James and Pet don't like **one another**.


James a Pet sa nemajú radi.



zaujímavosť

They are selfish. **They** think only about **themselves**.
Sú sebeckí. Myslia iba na seba.

They are in love. **They** think only about **each other**.
Sú zamilovaní. Myslia iba jeden na druhého.



Cvičenie 3.5. Doplňte do viet **-self/-selves** alebo **each other** alebo nechajte medzeru prázdnu.

- 1) We have never seen before.
- 2) Look at in the mirror, John.
- 3) Why are you so selfish, children? You think only about
- 4) She is good at languages.
She can make understood in English, French and Spanish.
- 5) Linda got up, washed and made breakfast.
- 6) At Christmas people give presents.
- 7) Can I have some more ice cream?
Sure, help
- 8) Friends should help
- 9) The shop closes at seven.
- 10) The film was good, but I didn't like the music at all.

Zámená

f) OPYTOVACIE

who	<i>kto</i>
whom	<i>kto po predložkách</i>
whose	<i>čí</i>
which	<i>ktorý</i>
what	<i>čo, aký</i>

Who did she go there with? *S kým tam išla?*
Whose car is it? *Čie je to auto?*
What do you mean by that? *Čo tým myslíš?*
What is your favourite colour? *Aká je tvoja obľúbená farba?*

ťahák

whose ≠ **who's**
Whose brother is it? **Who's** your best friend?
Čí je to brat? Kto je tvoj najlepší priateľ?

Cvičenie 3.6. Doplňte do otázok opytovacie zámená.

- is your favourite colour, red or orange?
- colour are his eyes?
- is the longest river – the Amazon or the Mississippi?
- is the capital of Peru?
- brother is Peter?
- is your favourite pop group?
- is the tallest person in your family?
- are they talking about? About cars.
- are they talking to? To Mary.
- is the weather like in England?

g) VZŤAŽNÉ

who	<i>ktorý (životné)</i>
whom	<i>ktorý (životné po predložke)</i>
which	<i>ktorý, čo (neživotné)</i>
that	<i>ktorý (životné aj neživotné)</i>
whose	<i>ktorého (životné aj neživotné)</i>
what	<i>to, čo</i>

This is the song **whose** words I can't remember.
 This is the song the words **of which** I can't remember.
To je tá pieseň, ktorej slová si nemôžem zapamätať.

ťahák

who *osoby*
which *veci*
that *osoby aj veci*

odkaz

Preštudujte si aj kapitolu
 Vzťažné vety na strane 125.

h) NEURČITÉ

SOME	
<i>nejaký, niekoľko, trochu</i>	v kladnej oznamovacej vete
	v otázke výzva, žiadosť

There are **some** books on the table.

Na stole sú nejaké knihy.

Will you have **some** more tea?

Dáš si ešte čaj?

ANY	
<i>nejaký</i>	v otázke
<i>nijaký</i>	v zápore (sloveso je záporné)
<i>akýkoľvek, ktorýkoľvek</i>	v kladnej oznamovacej vete

Are there **any** books on the table?

Sú na stole nejaké knihy?

There **aren't any** books on the table.

Na stole nie sú nijaké knihy.

Do it **any** time.

Urob to kedykoľvek.

ťahák

some *kladná veta*
any *záporná veta, otázka*

+ There **are some** oranges in the fridge.
 ? Are there **any** oranges in the fridge?
 - There **aren't any** oranges in the fridge.

zaujímavosť

Keď o niečo **žiadame** alebo niečo **ponúkame**, používame aj v otázke **some**.

Can I have **some** sugar, please?
Môžem dostať cukor, prosím?
Will you have **some** tea?
Dáte si čaj?



zaujímavosť

Any v kladnej vete znamená **akýkoľvek**.

Which newspaper do you want? Aké chceš noviny?
Any, I don't mind. Akékoľvek, je mi to jedno.



ZLOŽENINY

somebody, someone anybody, anyone nobody, no-one everybody, everyone	<i>osoby</i>
something anything nothing everything	<i>veci</i>
somewhere anywhere nowhere everywhere	<i>miesto</i>

Somebody brought it.
It was **everywhere**.

*Nieкто to priniesol.
Bolo to všade.*

NO *nijaký* sloveso je kladné

There **are no** books on the table.
Na stole nie sú nijaké knihy.

poznámka

There **are no** boys in our class. =
= There **aren't any** boys in our class.



vysvetlivka

Keď je zámeno podmetom na začiatku zápornej vety, musí byť v zápornom tvare toto zámeno, a nie sloveso.

Nobody knew how to do it.
Nikto nevedel, ako to urobiť.
– **Nemôže byť** –
Anybody didn't know how to do it.



Cvičenie 3.7. Doplňte do viet **some, any, no** alebo ich zloženíny.

- 1) Do you have for me? Yes, a flower.
- 2) Will you have more coffee?
No, thanks.
- 3) Is there milk left?
- 4) He never does work.
- 5) What would you like?, I don't mind.
- 6) Calm down, really happened.
- 7) It looked serious, but fortunately got injured.
- 8) There is at the door. Who could it be?
- 9) We would like to go hot in the summer.
- 10) Ben has to walk to school because there is bus.

NONE *nijaký* samostatne stojace

Are there any books on the table? No, there are **none**.
Sú na stole nejaké knihy? Nie, nijaké.



poznámka

Are there any girls in your class?
No, there are **no girls**. = No, (there are) **none**.

EVERY *každý (bez výnimky)*

I was there **every** day.
Bol som tam každý deň.

Zámená

EACH každý (jednotlivo)


Each of us understood it in a different way.
Každý z nás tomu rozumel inak.

ELSE ešte, iný (po opytovacích a neurčitých zámenách)

what else? čo ešte?
who else? kto ešte?
how else? ako ináč?
someone else niekto iný

pikantnosť

V obchode alebo reštaurácii môžeme často počuť frázu:
Anything else? Ešte niečo?
Nesmieme ju zameniť s frázou:
Is that all? Je to všetko?



ALL celý, všetok, všetci

I was there **all** day.
Bol som tam celý deň.
All the audience applauded.
Všetci tleskali.

BOTH oba, obe

Both my children were sick last week.
Obe moje deti boli minulý týždeň choré.


EITHER jeden aj, alebo druhý

There are houses on **either** side of the the street.
Na oboch stranách (na jednej i druhej strane) ulice sú domy.

Would you like tea or coffee? **Either**, I don't mind.
Dáš si čaj alebo kávu? Jedno či druhý, je mi to jedno.

poznámka

either.....or buď...alebo
He is **either** stupid **or** lazy.
Je buď hlúpy, alebo lenivý.




NEITHER ani jeden, ani druhý, nijaký (z dvoch)

I met two people at the station. **Neither** of them knew when my train leaves.
Na stanici som stretol dvoch ľudí. Ani jeden nevedel, kedy mi ide vlak.

vysvetlivka


Neither je záporné zámeno, preto musí byť sloveso kladné.
Neither of them **could** do it.
Ani jeden z nich to nemohol robiť.



poznámka

neither nijaký, ani jeden z dvoch
none nijaký, ani jeden z viacerých

Neither of us was there.
Ani jeden z nás (dvoch) tam nebol.
None of us was there.
Ani jeden z nás (viacerých) tam nebol.




ONE, ONES zástupné zámeno

I like this car, but I don't like that **one** (=that car).
Páči sa mi toto auto, ale tamto (auto) nie.
I don't like the green trousers, but I quite like the blue **ones**.
Tie zelené nohavice sa mi nepáčia, ale tie modré sa mi celkom páčia.

zaujímavosť

Po výrazoch **these** a **those** sa zámeno **ones** nepoužíva.
I like this house but I don't like that one.
I like these houses but I don't like **those**.



Cvičenie 3.8. Doplňte do viet zámená z rámčeka.

none	neither	each	every	all
either	one	ones	both	else

- 1) Jane and Hannah were late. They arrived at 10.
- 2) They tried two hotels, but of them had vacancies.
- 3) I promise, I will do I can.
- 4) She goes to the hairdresser's three weeks.
- 5) No-one could do it.
- 6) Which pears do you want? The green
- 7) you say sorry to him or you will have to leave.
- 8) There were a lot of people, but of them helped.
- 9) Which movie did you watch last night? The with James Dean.
- 10) There are several cars in front of the school. of them is a different colour.

OTHER, ANOTHER			
	jednotné číslo	množné číslo pred podstatným menom	množné číslo bez podstatného mena
nepočítateľné	other work <i>iná, ďalšia práca</i> the other work <i>tá druhá práca</i>		
počítateľné	another boy <i>iný, ďalší,</i> <i>ešte jeden chlapec</i> the other boy <i>ten druhý chlapec</i>	other boys <i>iní chlapci,</i> <i>ďalší chlapci</i> the other boys <i>tí druhí chlapci</i>	others <i>iní,</i> <i>ďalší</i> the others <i>tí druhí</i>

Can I have **another** cup of coffee?

Môžem dostať ešte jednu šálku kávy?

I have some **other** work to do.

Mám ešte nejakú inú prácu.

The other girl is clever.

To druhé dievča je bystré.

vysvetlivka

an + other = **another**



i) VÝRAZY MNOŽSTVA MUCH, MANY

PODSTATNÉ MENÁ			
počítateľné		nepočítateľné	
many books	<i>veľa kníh</i>	much snow	<i>veľa snehu</i>
a lot of books	<i>mnoho kníh</i>	a lot of snow	<i>mnoho snehu</i>
lots of books	<i>množstvá kníh</i>	lots of snow	<i>množstvo snehu</i>
few books	<i>málo kníh</i>	little snow	<i>málo snehu</i>
a few books	<i>pár, niekoľko kníh</i>	a little snow	<i>trochu snehu</i>

Cvičenie 3.9. Doplňte do viet výrazy z rámčka.

other	others	another	the other	the others
-------	--------	---------	-----------	------------

- 1) I broke his knife. I am afraid I will have to buy him one.
- 2) This bike is OK, but one is bad.
- 3) You shouldn't expect to do your work.
- 4) Is there any possibility?
- 5) Only one review of the film was positive, were negative.

Zámená

Výraz **much** sa používa v otázke a v zápornej vete.

There **wasn't much** snow in the mountains.

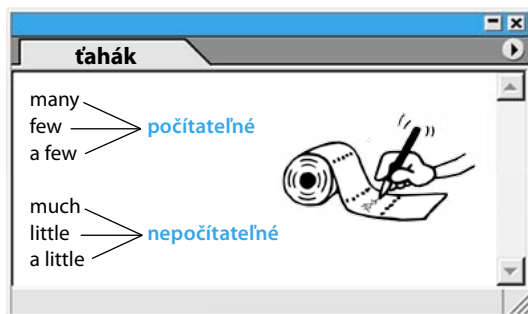
Na horách nebolo veľa snehu.

Ostatné výrazy sa používajú vo všetkých typoch viet.

Do you have **many** friends? = Do you have **a lot of** friends?

= Do you have **lots of** friends?

Máš veľa priateľov?



Cvičenie 3.10. Doplňte do viet **much, many, few, little, a few, a little**.

- 1) We don't have information, I am afraid.
- 2) I have time, I can't wait.
- 3) There was snow in the mountains, so we could still ski.
- 4) There weren't guests at the party. Only about 5.
- 5) I have got friends, it's good to know that.
- 6) There isn't to do in our town.
- 7) Shall we eat out tonight? Sorry, I have money.
- 8) He passed the exam even though he made mistakes.
- 9) The streets were almost empty. There were people there.
- 10) Have you got any money on you? Yes,

Test 3

- 1) Does it belong to Bill and Sam? No, it isn't
A) their B) them C) theirs D) they
- 2) Would you like coffee or tea?, I don't mind.
A) Neither B) Either C) None D) Each

- 3) Could you help me find glove?
A) another B) other C) others D) the other
- 4) There were a lot of people, but unfortunately of them helped him.
A) none B) neither C) all D) each
- 5) Who was that? A friend of
A) us B) our C) ours D) them
- 6) Let's go shopping. There is butter left.
A) no B) nothing C) any D) anything
- 7) We have got apples, we can make apple pie.
A) a little B) little C) a few D) few
- 8) It isn't here, it must be
A) anywhere else B) somewhere else
C) nowhere else D) something else
- 9) of you has broken the window?
A) Who B) Which C) What D) Whose
- 10) Jane, look at in the mirror, you look horrible.
A) yourself B) herself C) yourselves D) themself
- 11) Who are young ladies over there?
A) these B) this C) those D) that
- 12) Rick doesn't believe it
A) himself B) itself C) each other D) herself
- 13) Alison and Daniel have known for ages.
A) themselves B) himself
C) herself D) each other
- 14) luggage is it? Tom's or Bill's?
A) Whose B) What C) Who D) Whom
- 15) He didn't have reason to say that.
A) no B) some C) any D) anything
- 16) The building has seven floors and there are five offices on floor.
A) every B) each C) all D) both
- 17) I read two books by Ian Mc Ewan, but of them in English.
A) either B) no C) neither D) none
- 18) Let me tell you words about it.
A) a few B) a little C) few D) little
- 19) I need month to finish the project.
A) the other B) other C) another D) else
- 20) Do you like the brown shoes? No, I like the black
A) one B) ones C) them D) others

4. Číselky

a) ZÁKLADNÉ

0	nought	matematická veličina
zero		rovnice, stupne
nil		hovorovo, v športe
o		telefón

1	one	9	nine	30	thirty
2	two	10	ten	40	forty
3	three	11	eleven	50	fifty
4	four	12	twelve	60 – 90	-ty
5	five	13	thirteen		
6	six	13 – 19	-teen		
7	seven	15	fifteen		
8	eight	20	twenty		


21twenty-one atd.
 100one hundred
 236two hundred and thirty-six
 1,000one thousand
 1,000,000one million
 1,000,000,000one milliard GB
 one billion US
 2.45two point four five

Desiatky a jednotky sa spájajú **spojovníkom**:

twenty-one
 thirty-seven
 sixty-eight

zapamätaj si

Medzi desiatkou a jednotkou sa píše **spojovník**. 23 = twenty-three




Stovky a desiatky, príp. jednotky sa spájajú spojkou **and**:

three hundred **and** seventy-two
 nine hundred **and** three
 one hundred **and** twelve

zapamätaj si

Medzi stovkou a desiatkou sa číta **and**. 372 = three hundred **and** seventy-two



Skupiny **troch číslíc** sa oddeľujú **čiarkou**:

3,000 three thousand
 5,126,400 five million one hundred and twenty-six thousand four hundred
 2,500,457 two million five hundred thousand four hundred and fifty-seven

Hundred, thousand, million nemajú po určitých číslkách tvar množného čísla:

two hundred
 five thousand
 seven million

- ale -

hundreds of people *stovky ľudí*


ťahák

five hundred people

pästo ľudí

hundreds of people

stovky ľudí



Desatinné čísla sa píše s **desatinnou bodkou**:

3.64 three point six four
 50.05 fifty point o five
 0.5 nought point five


zaujímavosť

Čiarka oddeľuje skupinu troch číslíc.

Bodka oddeľuje desatinné čísla.

3,256 three thousand two hundred and fifty-six

3.256 three point two five six



Cvičenie 4.1. *Napište nasledujúce čísla slovami.*

- 13
- 30
- 78
- 98
- 15
- 51

Číslovky

- 7) 43
 8) 897
 9) 6,259
 10) 8,900,820
 11) 12
 12) 20
 13) 129
 14) 2.58
 15) 7,000,216

b) RADOVÉ

1-st	the first	<i>prvý</i>
2-nd	the second	<i>druhý</i>
3-rd	the third	<i>tretí</i>
4-th	the fourth	<i>štvrtý</i>
4 a vyššie +th		
7-th	the seventh	<i>siedmy</i>

zmeny v pravopise

five	5-th	fifth
nine	9-th	ninth
twelve	12-th	twelfth
twenty	20-th	twentieth

zložené číslovky

21-st	the twenty-first
36-th	the thirty-sixth

Pri radových číslovkách písaných číslou sa v angličtine, na rozdiel od slovenčiny, nikdy nepíše bodka.

the 1st
 the 2nd
 the 30th

ťahák

1.	the 1st	the first
2.	the 2nd	the second
3.	the 3rd	the third
4.	the 4th	the fourth

Rímske číslice sa pri menách panovníkov čítajú ako radové číslovky:

Henry VIII → Henry the Eighth
 Elizabeth I → Elizabeth the First

pikantnosť

WW I = World War One = the First World War
 WW II = World War Two = the Second World War

poznámka

Pred radovou číslovkou je určitý člen.
the first

Cvičenie 4.2. Napíšte k základným číslovkám radové číslovky.

1) one	the first	1st
2) twelve		
3) five		
4) forty		
5) fifty-four		
6) thirty-nine		
7) seventy-three		
8) twenty-two		
9) fifty-one		
10) two		

c) NÁSOBNÉ

<i>jedenkrát</i>	once
<i>dvakrát</i>	twice
<i>trikrát</i>	three times
<i>trikrát a viac</i>	+times

d) ZLOMKY

1/2	one half
1/3	one third
1/4	one quarter

2/5 two **fifths**
 32/74 thirty-two **over** seventy-four

Použitie zlomkov:

half a kilo	pol kila
half an hour	pol hodiny
a quarter of an hour	štvrt' hodiny
three and a half days	tri a pol dňa
three quarters of a mile	tri štvre míle

Cvičenie 4.3. Spojte výrazy z oboch stĺpcov.

- | | | |
|-----------------------|---------|-------|
| 1) four times | A) 1× | ..... |
| 2) four fifths | B) 4× | ..... |
| 3) three quarters | C) 2× | ..... |
| 4) four over fifteen | D) 3/20 | ..... |
| 5) twice | E) 3/4 | ..... |
| 6) once | F) 2/3 | ..... |
| 7) two thirds | G) 1/2 | ..... |
| 8) one half | H) 4/15 | ..... |
| 9) three point four | I) 4/5 | ..... |
| 10) three over twenty | J) 3.4 | ..... |

e) DÁTUMY A LETOPOČTY

21/03/1964	21 March, 1964
21. 3. 1964	March 21st, 1964
21st March, 1964	March 21, 1964

číta sa

- March, the twenty-first, nineteen-sixty-four
- the twenty-first of March, nineteen-sixty-four


Hundred sa v letopočte číta vtedy, keď je v jeho prvej alebo druhej časti číslo menšie ako desať

1905 nineteen hundred and five
 863 eight hundred and sixty-three

pikantnosť

Dátumy sa v britskej a americkej angličtine píšú odlišne.

UK	US	SK
03/05/2006	05/03/2006	3. mája 2006




19th **century**
BC Before Christ
AD Anno Domini

devätnáste storočie
 pred naším letopočtom
 nášho letopočtu

poznámka

Rok 2006 sa číta:
two thousand (and) six
(two thousand o six)




predložky

on the twenty-first of March
in 1964
in March


zaujímavosť

date	dátum
day	deň
month	mesiac
year	rok
century	storočie



ťahák

January	január	July	júl
February	február	August	august
March	marec	September	september
April	apríl	October	október
May	máj	November	november
June	jún	December	december



Číslovky

Cvičenie 4.4. Napíšte nasledujúce dátumy slovami.

- | | |
|------------------|---|
| 1) 26/05/2005 | the twenty-sixth of May two thousand (and) five |
| 2) 17. 11. 1989 | ..... |
| 3) 4th July 1776 | ..... |
| 4) 15. 3. 1939 | ..... |
| 5) 1534 | ..... |
| 6) 1620 | ..... |
| 7) 55 BC | ..... |
| 8) 43 AD | ..... |
| 9) 1066 | ..... |
| 10) 3. 6. 1998 | ..... |

f) MATEMATICKÉ SYMBOLY

- | | |
|-------------------|---|
| $3 + 3 = 6$ | three plus three equals (is) six |
| $5 - 2 = 3$ | five minus two equals (is) three |
| $2 \times 5 = 10$ | two multiplied by five equals (is) ten |
| $20 : 10 = 2$ | twenty divided by ten equals (is) two |
| $2^2 = 4$ | two squared equals (is) four |
| $\sqrt{4} = 2$ | the square root of four equals (is) two |
| 50 % | fifty per cent |
| 45° | forty-five degrees |

Cvičenie 4.5. Prepíšte slovami.

- | | |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1) 90 % | ninety per cent |
| 2) $6 + 12 = 18$ | ..... |
| 3) $5 \times 6 = 30$ | ..... |
| 4) $35 : 7 = 5$ | ..... |
| 5) $\sqrt{16} = 4$ | ..... |
| 6) $5^2 = 25$ | ..... |

5. Pomocné slovesá

BE, HAVE, DO

Pomocné slovesá pomáhajú tvoriť časy, otázky, zápor, trpný rod. Používajú sa v krátkych zisťovacích otázkach a v krátkych odpovediach.

V hovorovej angličtine sa často vyskytujú v skrátенých tvaroch.

a) BE

a) Tvorí **priebehové časy**.

I **am sitting**.

They **were driving**.

He has **been waiting** for an hour.

b) Tvorí **trpný rod**.

The room **is decorated** every year.

The car **was made** in Japan.


It **will be said** at the meeting.

zapamätaj si

Pomocné sloveso to be sa používa pri tvorení priebehových časov a trpného rodu.

I **am listening** to you.

It **was said** yesterday.



ČASOVANIE SLOVESA TO BE


prítomný čas	minulý čas	budúci čas
I am	I was	I will be
you are	you were	you will be
he is	he was	he will be
she is	she was	she will be
it is	it was	it will be
we are	we were	we will be
you are	you were	you will be
they are	they were	they will be

pikantnosť

Pozor na častú chybu:

It **will be delivered** tomorrow.

It **will be** delivered tomorrow.



SKRÁTENÉ TVARY

prítomný čas		budúci čas	
I am	I'm	I will be	I'll be
you are	you're	you will be	you'll be
he is	he's	he will be	he'll be
she is	she's	she will be	she'll be
it is	it's	it will be	it'll be
we are	we're	we will be	we'll be
you are	you're	you will be	you'll be
they are	they're	they will be	they'll be

Skrátené tvary sú v angličtine časté, nemali by sa však vyskytovať v písomnom prejave.

tahák

I am = I'm


you are = you're

he/she/it is = he's/she's/it's

we are = we're

you are = you're


they are = they're



pikantnosť

Apostrof v angličtine znamená, že boli vynechané písmená.

I'm – bolo vynechané a.



OTÁZKA


Otázka sa tvorí inverziou (zmenou slovosledu).

- + He is sitting. ? Is he sitting?
- + He was born in 1960. ? When was he born?

zapamätaj si

+ They are waiting.

? Are they waiting?



Pomocné slovesá

ZÁPOR


Zápor sa tvorí pomocou slova **not**.

- ➔ He **is not** sitting. = He **isn't** sitting.
- ➔ It **was not** said = It **wasn't** said.
- ➔ She **will not** be there. = She **won't** be there.

zapamätaj si

➕ It is raining.

➔ It is not raining. = It isn't raining.




Sloveso to be je aj plnovýznamové sloveso s významom byť.

They **are** waiting. **pomocné**

They **are** students. **významové**

zaujímavosť

Fráza **How are you?** je v anglicky hovoriacich krajinách v podstate súčasťou pozdravu. Z odpovedá slovenskému *Ako sa máš? Ako sa máte?* Mať sa zle a ešte sa k tomu aj priznať sa považuje za nezdvorilé, preto je jedinou spoločensky prijateľnou odpoveďou: I'm fine. Fine.



b) HAVE


Pomocné sloveso have tvorí **perfektné časy**

(predprítomný, predminulý, predbudúci).

We **have bought** a new car.

zapamätaj si

Pomocné sloveso to have sa používa pri tvorení perfektných časov:
I **have** never **been** there.




ČASOVANIE SLOVESA TO HAVE

prítomný čas	minulý čas	budúci čas
I have	I had	I will have
you have	you had	you will have
he has	he had	he will have
she has	she had	she will have
it has	it had	it will have
we have	we had	we will have
you have	you had	you will have
they have	they had	they will have

vysvetlivka

Sloveso have má rovnaký tvar vo všetkých osobách v minulom a budúcim čase. V prítomnom čase má iný tvar v tretej osobe jednotného čísla.
He **has** broken his leg.




SKRÁTENÉ TVARY

prítomný čas		minulý čas	
I have	I've	I had	I'd
you have	you've	you had	you'd
he has	he's	he had	he'd
she has	she's	she had	she'd
it has	it's	it had	
we have	we've	we had	we'd
you have	you've	you had	you'd
they have	they've	they had	they'd

budúci čas	
I will have	I'll have
you will have	you'll have
he will have	he'll have
she will have	she'll have
it will have	it'll have
we will have	we'll have
you will have	you'll have
they will have	they'll have

táhák

I have	=	I've
you have	=	you've
he/she/it has	=	he's/she's/it's
we have	=	we've
you have	=	you've
they have	=	they've



OTÁZKA

Otázka sa tvorí inverziou (zmenou slovosledu).

- + She **has** bought it. ? **Has she** bought it?

zapamätaj si

+ They have heard it.
? Have they heard it?




ZÁPOR

Zápor sa tvorí pomocou slova **not**.

She **has not** bought it. = She **hasn't** bought it.

zapamätaj si

+ They have heard it.
- They have not heard it. = They haven't heard it.



Sloveso to have je aj plnovýznamové s významom vlastniť, mať.


She **has** bought a new car. **pomocné**
She **has** a new car. **plnovýznamové**

Plnovýznamové sloveso to have got sa používa častejšie v **britskej** angličtine.

- + She **has got** a new car.
? **Has she got** a new car?
- She **hasn't got** a new car.

pikantnosť

Plnovýznamové sloveso to have got (mať, vlastniť) je vlastne predprítomný čas slovesa get.



V **americkej** angličtine sa častejšie používa plnovýznamové sloveso have.

- + She **has** a new car.
? **Does she have** a new car?
- She **doesn't have** a new car.

V **minulom čase** sa pri plnovýznamovom slovese to have (got) tvorí otázka a zápor pomocou **did** a **didn't**.

- ? **Did she have** short hair when she was 12?
- She **didn't have** short hair when she was 12.

c) DO

a) Tvorí sa pomocou neho **otázka** a **zápor** v jednoduchom prítomnom a v jednoduchom minulom čase.


- ? **Do** you understand?
- He **did not** (= **didn't**) know it.

b) V kladných oznamovacích vetách zdôrazňuje významové sloveso.

But I **did** understand it. *Ale ja som tomu rozumel.*

zapamätaj si

Pomocné sloveso to do sa používa pri tvorení otázky a záporu v jednoduchom prítomnom a v jednoduchom minulom čase.
Do you always do it?
I **don't** know.
He **didn't** do it.



ČASOVANIE SLOVESA TO DO

prítomný čas	minulý čas	budúci čas
I do	I did	I will do
you do	you did	you will do
he does	he did	he will do
she does	she did	she will do
it does	it did	it will do
we do	we did	we will do
you do	you did	you will do
they do	they did	they will do

Pomocné slovesá

Sloveso to do má rovnaký tvar pre všetky osoby v minulom a budúcom čase.

V prítomnom čase má iný tvar pre tretiu osobu jednotného čísla.


He never **does** it.

SKRÁTENÉ TVARY

budúci čas	
I will do	I'll do
you will do	you'll do
he will do	he'll do
she will do	she'll do
it will do	it'll do
we will do	we'll do
you will do	you'll do
they will do	they'll do

ťahák

will = 'll




ZÁPORA

V zápore sa často používajú skrátené tvary.

I do not	I don't
you do not	you don't
he does not	he doesn't
she does not	she doesn't
it does not	it doesn't
we do not	we don't
you do not	you don't
they do not	they don't

ťahák

do not = don't
does not = doesn't



Sloveso to do je aj plnovýznamové s významom robiť, konať.

Did you understand?

pomocné

I **did** it yesterday.

plnovýznamové

pikantnosť

Pozor na častú chybu.

Do you it every day?

Do you **do** it every day?

They **don't** it very often.

They **don't do** it very often.



zaujímavosť

Fráza **How do you do?** je súčasťou pri predstavovaní.

Zodpovedá približne slovenskému

Teší ma.



Cvičenie 5.1. Doplňte do viet pomocné slovesá do, be, have v správnom tvare.

- 1) Did you hear it yesterday?
- 2) James writing a letter to his uncle, not to his father.
- 3) What she do on Saturdays?
- 4) you ever met him before?
- 5) Where you born?
- 6) No, we go by tram, we went by bus.
- 7) It announced last week.
- 8) Matilda never been to Europe.
- 9) They in Mexico, they were in the USA.
- 10) How you? Fine, thanks. And you?

Cvičenie 5.2. Opravte chyby vo vetách. Vety prepíšte.

- 1) Jim have never smoked a cigar.
.....
- 2) We didn't it last week, we did it the week before.
.....
- 3) The girls doesn't wear skirts to school.
.....
- 4) It said at the meeting last Tuesday.
.....
- 5) I promise, I'll there in time.
.....

6. Modálne slovesá

CAN	COULD	MAY	MIGHT	MUST	NEED NOT	SHALL	SHOULD
OUGHT TO	WILL	WOULD	USED TO	DARE	HAD BETTER	WOULD RATHER	

Modálne slovesá modifikujú významové slovesá.

a) Vyjadrujú určitý stupeň povinnosti alebo schopnosti:

I **must** leave. **Musím** odísť.

I **can** swim. **Viem** plávať.

b) Vyjadrujú určitý stupeň pravdepodobnosti:


He **may** come. **Možno** príde.

It **can't** be true. **To nemôže** byť pravda.

poznámka

Po každom modálnom slovese musí nasledovať plnovýznamové sloveso.

He **can speak** French. **Vie** po francúzsky.



Od ostatných slovík sa modálne slovesá odlišujú nasledujúcimi zvláštnosťami.


- Nemajú -s v tretej osobe jednotného čísla **She must** do it.
- Otázka a zápor sa netvoria pomocnými slovesami, ale inverziou a pomocou slova not. **Can you** sing?
 They **mustn't** do it.
- Nasleduje po nich infinitív bez to. You **shouldn't say** that.
- Vyskytujú sa iba v jednoduchom prítomnom čase, niektoré v minulom čase a podmienovacom spôsobe. It **may** be true. We **could** do it.
- Ostatné tvary a časy sa vyjadrujú opisným spôsobom. He would **have to** ask.

OPISNÉ TVARY MODÁLNYCH SLOVIES

can	to be able to	<i>môcť</i>
may	to be allowed to	<i>smieť</i>
must	to have to	<i>musieť</i>

zapamätaj si

can = to be able to
may = to be allowed to
must = to have to




a) CAN, COULD

Zápor:	I cannot = can't	<i>neviem, nemôžem</i>
Opisný tvar:	to be able to	
Minulý čas:	could	
Podmieňovací spôsob:	could	

zaujímavosť

Sloveso **cannot** sa píše spolu.

Sloveso **could not** sa píše osve.



Použitie:

- na vyjadrenie schopnosti, neschopnosti
 I **can** swim. **Viem** plávať.
 I **cannot (can't)** swim. **Neviem** plávať.
- na vyjadrenie dovoľenia, zákazu
 I **can** sing. **Môžem** spievať.
 I **cannot (can't)** sing. **Nemôžem** spievať.
- na vyjadrenie istoty v zápore (určite nie)
 He **can't** be stupid. **Určite nie je** hlúpy.
- can + minulý infinitív – údiv, istota v minulosti
 He **can't have** stolen it. **Predsa to neukradol.**
 He **can't have** understood it. **Určite tomu nerozumel.**

Modálne slovesá


e) could + minulý infinitív – dej sa mohol odohrať, ale neodohral sa

He **could have** done it, it was easy. **Mohol to urobiť**, bolo to jednoduché. (*ale neurobil to*)

zaujímavosť

Sloveso can a could sa používa na vyjadrenie **žiadosti**.
Could je zdvorilejšie.

Can you help me? **Môžeš** mi pomôcť?
Could you do it for me? **Mohol by si** to pre mňa urobiť?
Can I borrow your pen? **Môžem** si požičať tvoje pero?
Could I use your phone? **Mohol by som** si zavolať?



Použitie opisného tvaru:

He **was able to** swim.

Bol schopný plávať.

He **will be able to** swim.

Bude môcť (schopný) plávať.

He **would be able to** swim.

Mohol by (bol by schopný) plávať.

He **has never been able to** swim. Nikdy **nevedel** plávať.

V minulom čase je rozdiel medzi could a was/were able to.
I **could** swim when I was 5. **Vedel som** plávať, keď som mal 5 rokov.

I **was able to** swim even though the water was very cold.
Bol som schopný plávať, aj keď voda bola veľmi studená.

Sloveso **can** a **could** sa používa pred nasledujúcimi slovesami:
see, hear, smell, feel, taste, understand, remember.

Do slovenčiny sa však neprekladá.

I **can see** that. To vidím.

Can you hear it? Počuješ to?

Cvičenie 6.1. Doplňte do viet **can/could** alebo **opisný tvar to be able to** v správnom tvare.

- I hope you will speak English well before you go to the USA next year.
- Peter speak when he was 18 months old.
- Excuse me, I ask you a question?
- I'd like play the violin.
- He has never lie.

6) I think she would do it, but she doesn't want to.

7) It was difficult, but we do it.

8) you give me a hand?

9) Megan used to run 1 mile.

10) I don't have time. I wait.

b) MAY, MIGHT

Zápor:	I may not	nesmiem (nemám dovolenie)
	I must not = mustn't	nesmiem (silný zákaz)
Opisný tvar:	to be allowed to	
Minulý čas:	might	
Podmieňovací spôsob:	might	

Použitie:

a) na vyjadrenie dovolenia, zákazu

May I come in? **Smiem** vstúpiť?

Passengers **may not** lean out of the window. *Cestujúci sa nesmú vykláňať z okna. (slabší zákaz)*

You **mustn't** do it. *To nesmieš robiť. (silnejší zákaz)*

b) na vyjadrenie neistoty

He **may** come. **Možno** príde.

He **might** come. **Možno** príde. (menej isté)

zaujímavosť

MAY + BE = MAYBE
MÔŽE + BYŤ = MOŽNO



c) may + minulý infinitív – neistota v minulosti

You **may have** heard about it. **Možno** si o tom počul.

d) might + minulý infinitív – väčšia neistota ako may

He **might have** understood. **Možno** rozumel. (*ale skôr nie*)

Použitie opisu:

I **was allowed to** do it. **Smel som** to urobiť.

He **will be allowed to** read the letter.

Bude si smieť prečítať ten list.

Cvičenie 6.2. Doplňte do viet **may/might** alebo opisný tvar **to be allowed to** v správnom tvare.

- The children have never swim in the lake.
- I open the door? It's hot in here.
- I hope I smoke at home when I am 18, which is in June.
- They (not) leave the hotel without permission last night.
- You would go with us if you asked your parents.
- He'd like drive his mum's car.
- Jessica be right.
- When I was 14 I (not) go to the cinema in the evening.
- Take an umbrella. It rain in the afternoon.
- I help myself to some more coffee?

c) MUST

Zápor:	I need not = needn't	<i>nemusím</i>
Opisný tvar:	to have to	

Použitie:

a) na vyjadrenie povinnosti

You **must** do it. *Musíš to urobiť.*

b) na vyjadrenie istoty

He **must** know it. *Určite to vie.*

c) must + minulý infinitív – istota v minulosti

They **must have** heard it. *Určite to počuli.*

Použitie záporu:

He **mustn't** do it. *Nesmie to robiť.*

He **needn't** do it. *Nemusí to robiť.*


He **doesn't have to** do it. *Nemusí to robiť.*

zapamätaj si

You **mustn't** do it. *Nesmieš to robiť.*

You **needn't** do it. *Nemusíš to robiť.*


You **can't** do it. *Nemôžeš to robiť.*



zaujímavosť

Must je veľmi silný príkaz.
Mustn't je veľmi silný zákaz.

You **must** go there! *Musíš tam ísť!*
You **mustn't** go there! *Nesmieš tam ísť!*



Použitie opisného tvaru:

I **have to** be there.

Musím tam byť. (nútia ma okolnosti)

She **had to** write it. *Musela to napísať.*

I **would have to** ask. *Musel by som sa spýtať.*

We **will have to** leave soon. *Budeme musieť o chvíľu odísť.*

Rozdiel medzi must a have to v prítomnom čase.

must subjektívna nutnosť

I **must** leave. *Musím odísť.*

have to objektívna nutnosť

I **have to** leave. *Musím odísť. (je neskoro, niekto na mňa čaká a pod.)*

Zápor v minulosti:

a) I **needn't have** raked the garden.

Nemusel som hrabať záhradu. (Ale hrabal som.)

b) I **didn't have (need) to** rake the garden.

Nemusel som hrabať záhradu. (A tak som ju nehrabal.)

Cvičenie 6.3. Doplňte do viet **must** alebo opisný tvar **to have to** v správnom tvare.

- Yesterday I stay in bed. I felt sick.
- I am afraid you go there tomorrow, not today.
- Have you ever speak in public?
- You be patient!
- It's Sunday tomorrow, so we (not) get up early.
- They (not) work yesterday, so they went to the sea.
- She do it right now!
- Policemen wear uniforms.
- We have never borrow money.
- I hope I will never ask him for help.

Modálne slovesá

Cvičenie 6.4. Doplňte do viet **must**, **mustn't**, **needn't**.

- It's top secret. You tell anybody.
- The train leaves in five minutes.
We hurry.
- They won a million. They work.
- There is still some wine left. We go shopping.
- You can borrow my bike but you damage it.
- James asked me to get a newspaper.
I forget to buy it
- You remember to call your mum.
- We need a new car. It be big but it be safe.
- You play with the matches, Tom. It's dangerous.
- You worry. It isn't dangerous.

PRAVDEPODOBNOŠŤ

MUST	URČITE ÁNO
They must come.	Určite prídu.
They must be coming.	Určite prichádzajú.
They must have come.	Určite prišli.

CAN'T	URČITE NIE
She can't be stupid.	Určite nie je hlúpa.
She can't be sleeping.	Určite nespí.
She can't have understood.	Určite nerozumela.

MAY/MIGHT	ASI ÁNO, MOŽNO ÁNO
He may/might do it.	Možno to urobí.
He may/might be having dinner.	Možno večera.
He may/might have gone shopping.	Možno išiel nakúpiť.

MAY NOT/MIGHT NOT	ASI NIE, MOŽNO NIE
They may not/might not buy it.	Možno si to nekúpi.
They may not/might not be listening.	Možno nepočúvajú.
They may not/might not have known that.	Možno to nevedeli.

Cvičenie 6.5. Prepíšte vety s použitím **must**, **can't**, **may/might**, **may not/might not**.

- I am sure Fiona is still working.
.....
- Maybe they were sick.
.....
- Maybe he didn't see her.
.....
- I am sure Jack is hungry.
.....
- I am sure you are joking.
.....
- I am sure it wasn't true.
.....
- I am sure you left your purse at home.
.....
- I am sure you are not serious.
.....
- Maybe they are waiting in another place.
.....
- I am sure he took it by mistake.
.....

d) SHALL

Zápor: shall not (shan't)

Vyjadruje ponuku, návrh, slabú povinnosť.

Shall I open the window? **Mám** otvoriť okno?

Where **shall** we meet? **Kde sa stretneme?**

Shall we go to the cinema? **Pôjdeme do kina?**

Cvičenie 6.6. Doplňte do viet **shall** a slovesá z rámčeka.

wear	answer	help	go	turn
meet	invite	lend	get	open

- I haven't got any money on me.
..... I some?
- The phone is ringing.
..... I it?
- The bag is heavy.
..... I you carry it?
- Let's go to the cinema. When and where
we?
- You are pale.
..... I the window?

- 6) The sun is shining.
..... we swimming?
- 7) I have got a headache.
..... I you aspirin?
- 8) The music is too loud.
..... I it down?
- 9) Let's have a party next week.
Who we ?
- 10) I am going to the ball tonight.
What I ?

e) SHOULD

Zápor: should not (shouldn't)

Použitie:

a) slabá povinnosť, odporúčanie.

You **should** try it.

Mal by si to skúsiť.

They **shouldn't** go there.

Nemali by tam chodiť.

He **should** be wearing sunglasses. **Mal by** nosiť slnečné okuliare.

b) domnienka.

The light is on. They **should** be at home.

Svetlo svieti. **Mali by** byť doma.

c) should + minulý infinitív – nesplnená povinnosť alebo rada v minulosti.

You **should have** been there.

Mal si tam byť.

(Ale nebol si.)

You **shouldn't have** drunk so much.

Nemal si toľko piť.

They **should have** been listening.


Mali počúvať.

zaujímavosť

He **should be going** there.
Mal by byť na ceste. (teraz)

He **should go** there.
Mal by tam ísť. (o chvíľu, zajtra)

He **should have gone** there.
Mal tam ísť. (včera)



d) v podmienkových vetách – hádam.

If you **should** see him...

Keby si ho hádam videl...

odkaz

Should v podmienkových vetách
pozri Podmienkové vety – kapitola
na strane 117.



Cvičenie 6.7. Utvorte vety. Použite **should/shouldn't** a správny tvar slovesa v zátvorke.

- 1) He is riding a bike without a helmet.
..... (wear)
- 2) They went there without a guide.
..... (go)
- 3) She wasn't there on time.
..... (be late)
- 4) You are tired, aren't you?
..... early last night. (go to bed)
- 5) I got lost yesterday
..... (ask the way)
- 6) He is supposed to send it by email.
..... (post)

f) OUGHT TO

Zápor: ought not to

Použitie:

a) slabá povinnosť, odporúčanie. Je formálnejšie ako should.

You **ought to** ask for it.

Mal by si o to požiadať.

b) ought to + minulý infinitív – nesplnená povinnosť alebo rada v minulosti


You **ought to have** been there. *Mal si tam byť.*

vysvetlivka

should = ought to

He **should** have been there. =

= He **ought to** have been there.



Modálne slovesá

g) WILL

Zápor: will not (won't)

Použitie:

a) ako pomocné sloveso pri tvorení budúceho času, pozri kapitolu Budúcnosť.

I **will** do it. I promise. *Urobím to. Sľubujem.*

b) na vyjadrenie vôle, ochoty

I **will** do it. *Urobím to. (som ochotný)*

c) will v otázke – zdvorilá žiadosť

Will you open the door? *Otvoríte, prosím, dvere?*

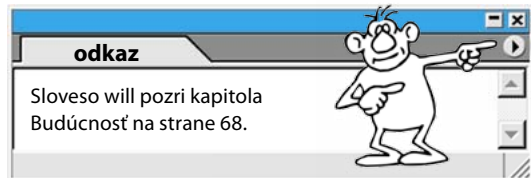
d) ponuka

Will you have some more tea? *Dáte si ešte čaj?*

e) zvyčajný alebo opakovaný dej v prítomnosti

Such things **will** happen *Také veci sa stávajú.*

The car **won't** start again. *A to auto zasa nie a nie naštartovať.*



h) WOULD

Zápor: would not (wouldn't)

Použitie:

a) ako pomocné sloveso na tvorenie podmienkovacieho spôsobu, pozri Podmienkové vety.

He **would** help me. *On **by** mi pomohol.*

b) would v otázke – zdvorilá žiadosť (zdvorilejšia ako will)

Would you do it for me? *Urobil **by** si pre mňa?*

c) na vyjadrenie opakovaného deja v minulosti pri slovesách vyjadrujúcich činnosť.

He **would** go to the cinema twice a week.

Chodieval do kina dvakrát týždenne.

i) USED TO

Zápor: didn't use to

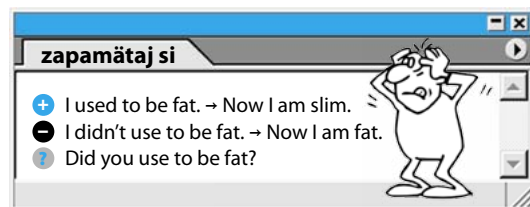
Otázka: did you use to

Vyjadruje opakovaný dej v minulosti, keď chceme naznačiť protiklad medzi súčasnosťou a minulosťou.

He **used to** play tennis. *Hrával tenis. (ale už nehráva)*

Sloveso would sa môže na vyjadrenie opakovaného deja v minulosti použiť iba pri slovách vyjadrujúcich činnosť, nie stav. Sloveso used to sa môže použiť v oboch prípadoch.

He **used to** play squash every day. = He **would play** squash every day.



Cvičenie 6.8. Dokončíte vety.

*Použite **used to** alebo **zápor**.*

- Jack is fat, but 5 years ago he
- I smoke a lot, but when I was 20 I at all.
- Sarah rarely goes out in the evening, but before she got married she every evening.
- They live in the country, but when they worked they in town.
- I have a car, but 3 years ago I a motorbike.
- The children to school because there was no bus.
- We in the pub every week, but now we hardly ever see each other.
- My parents watch TV every day, but they to the radio.
- Paul works as a travel courier, so he travels a lot. But before that he at all.
- I skirts, but now I have to.

USED TO + INF ≠ USED TO + -ING

She **used to drive** a car. **Jazdievala** autom. (Už nejazdí.)

She **is used to driving** a car. **Je zvyknutá jazdiť** autom.

Cvičenie 6.9. Doplňte do viet správny tvar slovesa.

- 1) She is used to (sleep) long on Sundays.
- 2) She used to (drink) a lot of coffee.
- 3) They were used to (have) parties when they lived in a house.
- 4) They used to (live) in a house.
- 5) We aren't used to (eat) out.
- 6) I am used to (meet) a lot of people in my job.
- 7) When we were young, we used to (go) swimming on Saturdays.
- 8) When we were children, we were used to (walk).
- 9) Jim used to (have) a bike.
- 10) Lucy is used to (live) alone.

j) DARE odvážiť sa

Je súčasťou fráz.

How dare you? Ako sa opovažuješ?

k) YOU'D BETTER (YOU HAD BETTER) mal by si radšej

Zápor: you'd better not

You'd **better** stay at home. **Mal by si radšej zostať doma.**

She'd **better** not tell him about it.

Radšej by mu o tom nemala hovoriť.

poznámka


Should všeobecná rada

Had better rada v konkrétnej situácii

You should be more patient. *Mal by si byť trpezlivejší.*

You'd better leave now (or you will be late).

Teraz by si mal radšej odísť.



l) I'D RATHER (I WOULD RATHER) radšej by som

Zápor: I'd rather not

I'd **rather** go. **Radšej by som išiel.**

I'd **rather** not tell you how old I am.


Radšej by som ti nepovedal, koľko mám rokov.

Po výrazoch **had better** a **would rather** nasleduje **infinitív bez to!**

ťahák

I'd better = I had better mal by som radšej

I'd rather = I would rather radšej by som



Cvičenie 6.10. Doplňte do viet 'd better alebo 'd rather a slovesá z rámčeka.

put on	stay	not tell	take	go
leave	wait	ask	do	study

- 1) It's getting dark. You..... now.
- 2) I don't want to eat now. I..... till Liz arrives.
- 3) I..... overnight if you don't mind.
- 4) You..... a taxi or you will be late again.
- 5) I..... him about it, I know.
- 6) She..... her sweater. It's cold in here.
- 7) We..... Julia for help. James is too busy to help us.
- 8) They want to go to the disco, but they..... .. because they are having exams tomorrow.
- 9) I..... there by tram. I don't like the underground.
- 10) They are expecting you to call them.
You..... it now.

Modálne slovesá

Test 4

- 1) Mr Wealthy is rich. He work.
A) mustn't B) cannot
C) needn't D) don't have to
- 2) The party last night was perfect. You
A) should come B) should have come
C) shall come D) used to
- 3) When I was 10, I to go out without my elder brother.
A) couldn't B) can't
C) mustn't D) wasn't allowed
- 4) What is Jack doing? I am not sure, he the car.
A) must wash B) must be washing
C) may wash D) may be washing
- 5) You leave now or you will be late.
A) 'd better B) 'd rather C) shall D) would
- 6) She is really fat. But 10 years ago she slim, didn't she?
A) was B) used to be
C) didn't use to be D) use to
- 7) I have never sleep under the bridge.
A) had to B) must C) had D) needn't
- 8) I didn't tell anybody. They to us.
A) had to listen B) must be listening
C) must have been listening D) had to be listening
- 9) When I moved to London, I wasn't on the left.
A) used to drive B) used to driving
C) drive D) didn't use to drive
- 10) Nurses wear uniforms.
A) have to B) have C) must D) needn't
- 11) I hate get up early in the morning.
A) have to B) must C) to must D) having to
- 12) You look exhausted. You take a day off.
A) should B) shouldn't C) needn't D) may not
- 13) Sorry, but smoking in here.
A) mustn't B) isn't allowed
C) can't D) needn't
- 14) I am sure the car wasn't red. The car red.
A) can't have been B) mustn't have been
C) needn't have been D) shouldn't have been
- 15) Of course, you can borrow it, but you lose it.
A) needn't B) may not
C) don't have to D) mustn't
- 16) It's a nice day. we go for a walk?
A) Should B) May C) Shall D) Will
- 17) I'd like to ski.
A) can B) to be able to
C) be able to D) could
- 18) Why did he wait? There was no need for him to wait. He
A) didn't have to wait B) didn't need to wait
C) needn't wait D) needn't have waited
- 19) The floor isn't dirty. You it.
A) mustn't clean B) needn't clean
C) can't clean D) shouldn't clean
- 20) I am angry with him. I see him now.
A) 'd better B) 'd better not
C) 'd rather not D) 'd rather not to

7. Prítomný čas

a) JEDNODUCHÝ


TVORENIE

Tvar je vo všetkých osobách, okrem tretej osoby jednotného čísla, totožný s infinitívom bez to. V tretej osobe jednotného čísla sa pridáva koncovka -s alebo -es.

I want	we want
you want	you want
he wants	they want
she wants	
it wants	

zapamätaj si

he/she/it works



Zmeny v pravopise v tretej osobe jednotného čísla

a) po sykavkách sa pridáva koncové -es
to finish he finishes


b) koncové -y sa po spoluhláske mení na -i a pridáva sa -es
to study he studies
- ale -

-y po samohláske zostáva
to buy he buys

c) pri slovesách to do a to go pribúda v tretej osobe jednotného čísla -es
to do he does
to go he goes

ťahák

watch he/she/it watches
do he/she/it does
go he/she/it goes
study he/she/it studies



OTÁZKA

Otázka sa tvorí pomocou **do** (v tretej osobe jednotného čísla **does**), ktoré je na začiatku vety alebo za opytovacím zámenom.


DO + PODMET + SLOVESO V INFINITÍVE BEZ TO

DOES + PODMET + SLOVESO V INFINITÍVE BEZ TO

Do you want it? Chceš to? Chcete to?
Does he want it? Chce to?
What do you want? Čo chceš? Čo chcete?


zaujímavosť

Why Prečo
What Čo, aký
Who Kto
When Kedy
What time O kolkej
Where Kde, kam
How Ako
How often Ako často
How much Koľko (nepočítateľné)
How many Koľko (počítateľné)



vysvetlivka

+ He goes to the cinema every week.
? Does he go to the cinema every week?
- He doesn't go to the cinema every week.



KRÁTKE ODPOVEDE

V angličtine je nezdvorilé odpovedať na otázku iba Yes, No. V jednoduchom prítomnom čase odpovedáme ešte pomocným slovesom **do** alebo **does**, v zápore **don't** alebo **doesn't**.

Do you like it? Páči sa ti/vám to?
+ Yes, I do. Áno, páči.
- No, I don't. Nie, nepáči.

Prítomný čas

Does he smoke?

+ Yes, he **does**.- No, he **doesn't**.

Fajčí?

Áno, fajčí.

Nie, nefajčí.

ZÁPŮR

ZápŮr sa tvorí pomocou slovesa do + not (does not).

V zápore sa často používajú skrátené tvary **don't** a **doesn't**.PODMET + **DON'T** + SLOVESO V INFINITÍVE BEZ TO
(DO NOT)PODMET + **DOESN'T** + SLOVESO V INFINITÍVE BEZ TO
(DOES NOT)I **don't** (do not) want it.

Ja to nechcem.


He **doesn't** (does not) want it.

On to nechce.

zapamätaj si

I /you/we/they **do not** =
= I /you/we/they **don't**

he/she/it **does not** =
= he/she/it **doesn't**



POUŽITIE

a) na vyjadrenie bežného a opakovaného deja v prítomnosti

He goes to school every day. Každý deň chodí do školy.

b) na vyjadrenie všeobecne platného deja

Some birds eat fish. Niektoré vtáky jedia ryby.

c) pri slovesách, ktoré netvoria priebehový čas, vyjadruje dej,
ktorý práve prebieha, alebo stav

I know him very well. Poznám ho veľmi dobre.

d) pri cestovných poriadkoch alebo rozvrhu vyjadruje
budúcnosť

The train leaves at 7. Vlak odchádza o 7.

e) v časových a podmienkových vetách vyjadruje budúcnosť

I will call as soon as she arrives. Zavolám hneď, keď príde.

If she has time, she will come. Ak bude mať čas, príde.

odkaz

Použitie jednoduchého prítomného času v podmienkových a časových vetách – pozri kapitolu Podmienkové vety na strane 117 a Časové vety na strane 121.



Cvičenie 7.1. Napíšte slovesá v tretej osobe jednotného čísla.

HE/SHE/IT

- 1) go
- 2) watch
- 3) carry
- 4) play
- 5) fly
- 6) study
- 7) do
- 8) finish
- 9) try
- 10) have
- 11) be
- 12) kiss
- 13) pray
- 14) wish
- 15) buy

Cvičenie 7.2. Vytvorte z nasledujúcich viet otázky a záporné vety.

- 1) + He goes to the theatre once a month.
?
-
- 2) + They live in the country.
?
-
- 3) + It often rains in England.
?
-
- 4) + Paul likes tea with milk.
?
-

- 5) + Jim and Bob watch TV in the evening.
 ??
 -

b) PRIEBEHOVÝ

TVORENIE

PODMET + **TO BE** + PRÍČASTIE PRÍTOMNÉ

PRÍČASTIE PRÍTOMNÉ = INFINITÍV + **-ING**

Časuje sa iba sloveso to be.

Pri slovese to be sa môžu používať skrátené tvary.

I am working.	We are working.
You are working.	You are working.
He is working.	They are working.
She is working.	
It is working.	

ťahák	
I am working.	= I'm working.
You are working.	= You're working.
He is working.	= He's working.
She is working.	= She's working.
It is working.	= It's working.
We are working.	= We're working.
You are working.	= You're working.
They are working.	= They're working.

Zmeny v pravopise prídavia prítomného

a) vypadáva nevyslovené koncové -e

to come coming

b) pri jednoslabičných slovesách sa zdvojuje koncová spoluhláska

to sit sitting

c) pri viacslabičných slovesách sa zdvojuje koncová spoluhláska, keď je prízvukná

to begin beginning

- ale -

to offer offering

d) pri slovesách to travel a to control sa v britskej angličtine zdvojuje koncové -l

to travel travelling

to control controlling

e) pri slovesách to lie a to die vypadáva koncové -e a -i sa mení na -y.

to lie lying

to die dying

ťahák	
stop	stopping
make	making

OTÁZKA

Otázka sa tvorí inverziou (zmenou slovosledu).

TO BE + PODMET + PRÍČASTIE PRÍTOMNÉ

Are (you) sleeping?

Spíš?

Is (he) listening to us?

Počúva nás?

What are (they) reading?

Čo čítajú?

zapamätaj si	
+ He is running.	
? Is he running?	

KRÁTKE ODPOVEDE

Odpovedáme pomocným slovesom to be v príslušnej osobe.

Are you writing a letter?

Píšeš list?

+ Yes, I **am**.

Áno, píšem.

- No, I 'm **not**.

Nie, nepíšem.

Is she walking?

Prechádza sa?

+ Yes, she **is**.

Áno, prechádza.

- No, she **isn't**.

Nie, neprechádza.

Prítomný čas

ZÁPOR

Zápor tvoríme pridaním slova **not** k slovesu **to be**.

V zápore sa často používajú skrátené tvary.

PODMET + TO BE + **NOT** + PRÍČASTIE PRÍTOMNÉ

I'm **not** (am not) sleeping. *Nespím.*

It **isn't** (is not) raining. *Neprší.*

They **aren't** (are not) jogging. *Nebehajú.*

vysvetlivka

They are reading.
 Are they reading?
 They aren't reading.

zapamätaj si

I am not = I'm **not**
he/she/it is not = he/she/it **isn't**
you/we/they are not = you/we/they **aren't**

POUŽITIE

a) na vyjadrenie deja, ktorý práve prebieha

We are eating. *Jeme (práve teraz).*

b) na vyjadrenie deja, ktorý je dočasný, nemusí prebiehať v danej chvíli

She is staying with me. *Býva so mnou. (dočasne)*

c) na vyjadrenie istej budúcnosti

I am leaving tomorrow. *Zajtra odchádzam.*

d) v spojení s **always** vyjadruje nevoľu nad opakovaným dejom v prítomnosti

And she is always talking and talking.

A ona stále rozpráva a rozpráva.

zaujímavosť

Sloveso **have** vo význame mať netvorí príbehový čas, ale vo frázach áno.
 I have a shower. *Mám sprchu.*
 I am having a shower. *Práve sa sprchujem.*

Cvičenie 7.3. Utvorte prídavné prídavné.

- 1) sit
- 2) study
- 3) have
- 4) ski
- 5) smoke
- 6) play
- 7) get
- 8) forget
- 9) leave
- 10) live
- 11) travel
- 12) stop
- 13) come
- 14) carry
- 15) begin

Cvičenie 7.4. Dajte slová do správneho poradia a utvorte vety.

- 1) TOM AND PAOLA/FRONT/WAITING/WHY/IN/OF THE HOUSE/ARE?
.....?
- 2) I /MEAN/DON'T/WHAT/UNDERSTAND/YOU.
.....?
- 3) DO/DOES/ON/WHAT/JANE/SATURDAYS?
.....?
- 4) HOW/SNOW/DOES/IN/YOUR/OFTEN/IT/COUNTRY?
.....?
- 5) YOU/STILL/IAN MC EWAN/ARE/THE BOOK/READING/BY?
.....?
- 6) HAPPENING/WHAT/IS?
.....?
- 7) US/DOESN'T/JAMIE/TENNIS/WITH/PLAY.
.....?
- 8) DO/GO/THE SMITHS/TO/WHEN/THE MOUNTAINS?
.....?
- 9) GO/DOES/WANT/TO/HER/SHOPPING/ROBIN/WITH?
.....?
- 10) TONIGHT/I /NOT/SARAH/PLAYING/WITH/AM/SQUASH.
.....?

Niektoré slovesá netvoria priebehové časy. Pozri kapitolu 14. Slovesá netvoriace priebehový čas na strane 76.

Cvičenie 7.5. *Doplňte do viet slovesá v jednoduchom prítomnom alebo priebehovom čase.*

- | | |
|---|---------------|
| 1) He at me, which drives me mad. | SHOUT |
| 2) Let's go for a walk. It any more. | RAIN |
| 3) Peter often the bus. | MISS |
| 4) Who today? | MISS |
| 5) Jane, where are you? I a shower. | HAVE |
| 6) I have just bought the ticket and I tomorrow. | FLY |
| 7) We usually TV but today we to the radio. | WATCH, LISTEN |
| 8) She the same mistake again and again. It's horrible. | MAKE |
| 9) It dark, we must go. | GET |
| 10) My father French and English. | SPEAK |

8. Minulý čas

a) JEDNODUCHÝ

TVORENIE

a) Pravidelné slovesá

Pri pravidelných slovesách sa tvorí príponou **-ed**.
Má vo všetkých osobách rovnaký tvar.

INFINITÍV + ED

He **washed** his car yesterday. *Včera umyl auto.*
They **helped** us. *Pomohli nám.*

Zmeny v pravopise

a) vypadáva nevyslovené koncové -e
to promise he **promised**

b) pri jednoslabičných slovesách sa zdvojuje koncová
spoluhláska
to stop he **stopped**


c) pri viacslabičných slovesách sa zdvojuje koncová
spoluhláska, ak je prízvuková
to prefer he **preferred**

d) pri slovesách to travel a to control sa v britskej
angličtine zdvojuje koncové -l
to travel he **travelled**
to control he **controlled**

e) pri slovesách končiacich sa na -y pred samohláskou
nastáva zmena -y na -i
to study he **studied**
-ale -
to play he **played**

zapamätaj si

stop	stopped
prefer	preferred
travel	travelled
control	controlled
study	studied



Cvičenie 8.1. Utvorte minulý čas.

- 1) drop.....
- 2) study.....
- 3) change.....
- 4) knit
- 5) look.....
- 6) listen.....
- 7) prefer.....
- 8) love.....
- 9) play.....
- 10) visit.....
- 11) travel.....
- 12) marry.....
- 13) ask.....
- 14) be.....
- 15) stay.....

b) Nepravidelné slovesá

Pri nepravidelných slovesách sa jednoduchý minulý čas
tvorí nepravidelne, pozri prehľad nepravidelných slovies
na strane 135.

odkaz

Preštuduj si nepravidelné
slovesá na strane 135.



Cvičenie 8.2. Doplňte chýbajúce tvary nepravidelných slovies.

Po slovensky	Infinitív	Minulý čas	Príčastie minulé
byť	be		been
		beat	
	catch		
			frozen
rozumieť			
		fell	
			swum
	ring		
cítiť sa			

Po slovensky	Infinitív	Minulý čas	Príčastie minulé
		bit	
			won
ležať			
	teach		
			come
	drive		
			paid
		told	
	say		
			eaten
piť			
	rise		
		hit	
			held
stať sa			
	throw		
		shot	
			woken
fúkať			
		chose	
			lost

OTÁZKA

Vo všetkých osobách sa **otázka** tvorí pomocou **did**. Did stojí na začiatku otázky alebo nasleduje za opytovacím zámenom.

DID + PODMET + INFINITÍV BEZ TO

Did (you) **see** it last week? *Videl si to minulý týždeň?*
 When **did** (you) **see** it? *Kedy si to videl?*

zaujímavosť	
Why	Prečo
What	Čo, aký
Who	Kto
When	Kedy
What time	O koľkej
Where	Kde, kam
How	Ako
How often	Ako často
How much	Koľko (nepočítateľné)
How many	Koľko (počítateľné)



Cvičenie 8.3. Pýtajte sa na podčiarknuté výrazy.

- Kim met **Peter** last night.
.....
- They saw the film **at the cinema**.
.....
- Jim put **the pen** on the desk.
.....
- Jessica shut the window **because she was cold**.
.....
- Charles woke up **at 7** yesterday.
.....
- We bought **three** melons.
.....
- They played **tennis** in the morning.
.....
- I found the glasses **under the bed**.
.....
- She made **a cup of coffee**.
.....
- They did it **because we asked them**.
.....

ťahák

+

 She **went** to school.

?

Did she **go** to school?

KRÁTKE ODPOVEDE

Odpovedáme pomocným slovesom **did**, v zápore **didn't**.

- Did you understand? *Rozumel si?*
 + Yes, I **did**. *Áno, rozumel.*
 - No, I **didn't**. *Nie, nerozumel.*

ZÁPOR

Pri všetkých osobách sa **zápor** tvorí pomocou **did not**.
 V zápore sa často používa skrátený tvar **didn't**.

PODMET + **DIDN'T** + SLOVESO V INFINITÍVE BEZ TO
 (DID NOT)

She **didn't** do it. *Ona to neurobila.*

zapamätaj si

did not = didn't

Minulý čas

Cvičenie 8.4. Utvorte záporné vety.

- 1) They chose the red ball.
.....
- 2) She lent me the book.
.....
- 3) Ruth did the homework at school.
.....
- 4) Peter wrote me a letter.
.....
- 5) I felt tired.
.....
- 6) John slept well last night.
.....
- 7) We wanted to meet them at the party.
.....
- 8) Vicky drank only beer.
.....
- 9) We understood why they did it.
.....
- 10) She got lost.
.....

POUŽITIE

Jednoduchý minulý čas vyjadruje dej, ktorý sa odohral v minulosti a už sa skončil, vo vete sú často výrazy vyjadrujúce minulosť.

yesterday	včera
last week	minulý týždeň
last night	včera v noci, večer
last month	minulý mesiac
last year	vlani
last Monday	minulý pondelok
a week ago	pred týždňom
then	vtedy
before the war	pred vojnou
in 1980	v roku 1980
from... to	od... do
when	kedy
I worked a lot last week.	Minulý týždeň som veľa pracoval.
They went there a year ago.	Išli tam pred rokom.

b) PRIEBEHOVÝ

TVORENIE

PODMET + WAS/WERE + PRÍČASTIE PRÍTOMNÉ

I was writing.	We were writing.
You were writing.	You were writing.
He was writing.	They were writing.
She was writing.	
It was writing.	

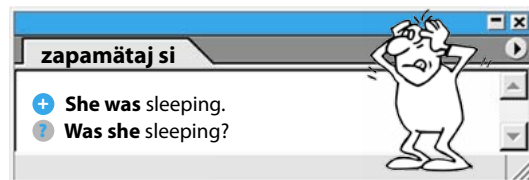
Príčasie prítomné a pravopisné zmeny pozri v kapitole Prítomný čas priebehový na strane 51.

OTÁZKA

Otázka sa tvorí inverziou (zmenou slovosledu).

WAS/WERE + PODMET + PRÍČASTIE PRÍTOMNÉ

Was (she) standing ?	Stála?
Were (you) sitting ?	Sedel si?
What were (they) doing ?	Čo robili?



KRÁTKE ODPOVEDE

Odpovedáme slovesom **was, were**, v zápore **wasn't/weren't**.

Were you waiting for a long time? Čakali ste dlho?

- + Yes, we **were**. Áno, čakali.
 - No, we **weren't**. Nie, nečakali.

Was he sleeping? Spal?

- + Yes, he **was**. Áno, spal.
 - No, he **wasn't**. Nie, nespál.

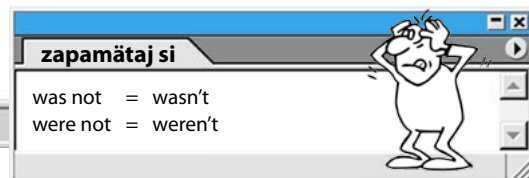
ZÁPOR

Zápor tvoríme pridaním slova **not** k slovesu **was, were**.

V zápore sa často používajú skrátené tvary **wasn't/weren't**.

PODMET + WASN'T/WEREN'T + PRÍČASTIE PRÍTOMNÉ

I **wasn't** (was not) sitting. Nesedel som.
 We **weren't** (were not) drinking. Nepili sme.



POUŽITIE

- a) na vyjadrenie deja, ktorý sa odohral v určitom okamihu v minulosti

We were watching TV news yesterday at 7.

Včera o siedmej sme pozerali správy.

- b) na vyjadrenie dejov, ktoré prebiehali súčasne a trvali určitý čas

I was eating while he was reading.

Ja som jedol, zatiaľ čo on čítal.

- c) na vyjadrenie deja, ktorý trval určitý čas v minulosti a bol prerušený alebo narušený iným dejom

I was having a bath when the phone rang.

Kúpam som sa, keď (v tom) zazvonil telefón.

Cvičenie 8.5. Dajte slová do správneho poradia a utvorte vety.

- 1) I /MY HUSBAND/WASHING UP/WAS/WAS/ A NEWSPAPER/WHILE/READING.
.....
- 2) AT/WHAT/DOING/YOU/WERE/?
.....
- 3) WAS/ARRIVED/IT/WHEN/RAINING/HE?
.....
- 4) A DRESS/DOROTHY/WASN'T/YESTERDAY/WEARING.
.....
- 5) YOU/WE/WHEN/WERE/DINNER/HAVING/PHONED.
.....

Cvičenie 8.6. Slovesá v zátvorke dajte do jednoduchého alebo prebiehového minulého času.

- 1) The sun (SHINE) when we (ARRIVE) in Paris.
- 2) I (WAIT) for my son when it (START) to rain.
- 3) When he (MEET) her she (WEAR) a red skirt.
- 4) It (HAPPEN) while we (DRIVE) through the village.
- 5) Jack (BREAK) his leg when he

- (SKI).
- 6) What you (DO) when I (SEE) you in the park?
- 7) The boys (PLAY) football when the ball (HIT) the door.
- 8) We (LISTEN) to Mozart when he (FALL) asleep.
- 9) This time yesterday I (HAVE) dinner with my friend.
- 10) How fast you (DRIVE) when the police (STOP) you?

Test 5

- 1) I was lost. I what to say.
A) don't knew B) don't know
C) didn't knew D) didn't know
- 2) What when she you at the party?
A) did you do, met B) were you doing, met
C) did you do, was meeting D) were you doing, was meeting
- 3) How often to the mountains?
A) do you go B) are you going
C) you went D) did you went
- 4) Does she often drink alcohol? Yes, she
A) do B) did C) drinks D) does
- 5) Why me? It drives me mad!
A) is he always interrupting
B) does he always interrupt
C) does he always interrupts
D) does he always interrupting
- 6) Tomorrow we dinner with the Parkers.
A) have B) are having
C) had D) were having
- 7) Mr Clumsy off a ladder while he the ceiling.
A) felt, was painting
B) was falling, was painting
C) fell, was painting D) felt, painted

Minulý čas

- 8) you see there? Pamela.
A) What did B) Who did C) Why did D) When did
- 9) Lucy, where are you? I a bath.
A) have B) had C) am having
D) was having
- 10) Jane always trousers. Why a dress today?
A) is wearing, wears B) wears, she is wearing
C) is wearing, does she wear D) wears, is she wearing
- 11) Lionel his wife while he in London.
A) was meeting, was working
B) met, was working C) was meeting, worked
D) met, worked
- 12) The train to Oxford at 7:30.
A) leaves B) is leaving C) does leave
D) don't leave
- 13) Who? Only Peter Black.
A) does miss B) is missing C) missed D) miss
- 14) They late. They the bus again.
A) was, missed B) were, missed
C) were, were missing D) were, miss
- 15) Suzy often TV, but now she French.
A) watches, studies B) is watching, is studying
C) watches, is studying D) is watching, studies
- 16) The Earth the Sun.
A) is revolving B) was revolving
C) revolves D) revolved
- 17) This time yesterday we on the beach.
A) lay B) were liing C) were lying D) laid
- 18) I have a new girlfriend. She with me.
A) is staying B) stays
C) was staying D) stayed
- 19) I am sure it a year ago.
A) didn't happen B) doesn't happen
C) wasn't happening D) happens
- 20) What Daniel? He is a taxi driver.
A) do, do B) does, do C) is, doing D) do, does

9. Predprítomný čas – Perfektum

a) JEDNODUCHÝ

TVORENIE

HAVE/HAS + PRÍČASTIE MINULÉ

I **have lost** my key. *Stratil som kľúč.*

Príčasie minulé sa tvorí pridaním prípony **-ed** k infinitívu pravidelných slovies. Pri nepravidelných sloviesach sa tvorí nepravidelne, pozri prehľad nepravidelných slovies na strane 135.


vysvetlivka

She **has read** it.
*Prečítala to. (= Má to **prečítané**.)*




odkaz

Preštuduj si nepravidelné sloviesá na strane 135.



vysvetlivka

I have	=	I've	it has	=	it's
you have	=	you've	we have	=	we've
he has	=	he's	you have	=	you've
she has	=	she's	they have	=	they've



- 9) think
- 10) eat
- 11) speak
- 12) sell
- 13) fall
- 14) feel
- 15) do
- 16) go
- 17) buy
- 18) know
- 19) get
- 20) keep
- 21) stop
- 22) give
- 23) rise
- 24) fight
- 25) hide
- 26) wake
- 27) hurt
- 28) steal
- 29) write
- 30) choose

vysvetlivka

I /you/we/they	have been there.
He/she/it	has been there.



OTÁZKA


Otázka sa tvorí inverziou (zmenou slovosledu).

HAVE/HAS + PODMET + PRÍČASTIE MINULÉ

Have	(you)	done	it?	<i>Urobil si to?</i>
Has	(he)	started	?	<i>Začal?</i>

tahák

+ She **has** met him before.
? Has she met him before?



Cvičenie 9.1. Utvorte príčasie minulé.

- 1) see
- 2) wait
- 3) have
- 4) lose
- 5) bring
- 6) break
- 7) hit
- 8) sing

Predprítomný čas

KRÁTKE ODPOVEDE

Odpovedáme pomocným slovesom **have/has**, v zápore **haven't/hasn't**.

Have you heard it?

+ Yes, I **have**.

- No, I **haven't**.

Počul si to?

Áno, počul.

Nie, nepočul.

Has she ever done it?

+ Yes, she **has**.

- No, she **hasn't**.

Už to niekedy urobila?

Áno, urobila.

Nie, neurobila.

ZÁPOR

Zápor sa tvorí pridaním slova **not** k pomocnému slovesu **have/has**. V zápore sa často používajú skrátené tvary **haven't/hasn't**.

PODMET + **HAVEN'T** (HAVENOT) + PRÍČASTIEMINULÉ
HASN'T (HAS NOT)

She **hasn't** (has not) said it.

Nepovedala to.

They **haven't** (have not) heard it.

Nepočuli to.

vysvetlivka

have not = haven't

has not = hasn't

POUŽITIE

a) na vyjadrenie deja, ktorý sa odohral v bližšie neurčenom čase v minulosti a jeho **následky** siahajú do prítomnosti
Jane has broken her leg.

Jana si zlomila nohu. (Má ju zlomenú.)

! Ak je čas v minulosti určený, nemožno použiť predprítomný čas. Musíme použiť minulé čas.

Jane broke her leg yesterday. *Jana si včera zlomila nohu.*

zapamätaj si

I have lost my key.

Stratil som kľúč.

I lost my key yesterday. *Včera som stratil kľúč.*

pikantnosť

I **have got** a new bike.

Dostal som nový bicykel. = **Mám** nový bicykel.

Have got (*mať*) je vlastne predprítomný čas slovesa get (*dostať*).

b) na vyjadrenie deja, ktorý sa začal v minulosti a **stále trvá** (obyčajne pri slovesách, ktoré netvorია priebehový čas). Vo vete je pomocou výrazov **for** (počas) a **since** (od) vyjadrené, **ako dlho** dej **trvá**.

We have known him **for** 9 years. *Poznáme ho 9 rokov.*

We have known him **since** 1998. *Poznáme ho od roku 1998.*

! Ak nie je vo vete uvedené, ako dlho dej trvá, musíme použiť prítomný čas.

We know him. *Poznáme ho.*

zapamätaj si

I know John.

Poznám Jána.

I have known John for ages.

Poznám Jána už dlho.

zaujímavosť

She is there for a week. *Je tam na týždeň.*

She has been there for a week. *Je tam (už) týždeň.*

She was there for a week. *Bola tam týždeň.*

c) v **otázke**, keď sa pýtame, **ako dlho** dej prebieha (pri slovesách, ktoré netvorია priebehový čas)

How long have they known each other? *Ako dlho sa poznajú?*

How long has she been there? *Ako dlho je tam?*

! Ak sa pýtame, či sa niečo odohráva, a nie, ako dlho, musíme použiť prítomný čas.

Do you know her? *Poznáš ju?*

zapamätaj si

Do you have a cat? Máš mačku?
How long have you had the cat?
Ako dlho máš tú mačku?



d) ak hovoríme o **skúsenosti** alebo **zážitku**, ktorý považujeme za **dôležitý**. Fakt, že sa dej odohral, je dôležitejší ako čas, kedy sa odohral.

She has been married three times. Bola trikrát vydatá.

e) v **otázke**, keď sa pýtame, či sa niečo **doteraz** alebo **už** stalo či nestalo

Have you **ever** been to Canada? Bol si už niekedy v Kanade?

Has he **already** left? Už odišiel?

Has it stopped snowing **yet**? Už prestalo snežiť?

! Pri slovese to be sa v predprítomnom čase používa predložka **to**, a nie in.

Was she in New York last year? Bola v ňom v New Yorku?

Has she ever been **to** New York? Bola už niekedy v New Yorku?

zaujímavosť

Keď sa pýtame, kedy sa niečo stalo, musíme použiť jednoduchý minulé čas.
How long have you had this watch?
Ako dlho máš tieto hodinky?
When did you get it? Kedy si ich dostal?



f) v **zápornej** vete, ktorá hovorí, že sa niečo **nikdy** alebo **doteraz neodohralo**

I have **never** heard such a stupid thing.

Takú hlúposť som ešte nikdy nepočul.

They haven't seen the film **yet**. Ešte ten film nevideli

zapamätaj si

I have never **been to** London.
Nikdy som **nebol** v Londýne.
I wasn't in London last year.
Vlani som v Londýne **nebol**.



vysvetlivka

V angličtine platí pravidlo jedného záporu.

I have **never** heard it.

Ešte som to nikdy nepočul.

I **haven't** heard it yet.

Ešte som to nepočul.



g) dej sa síce skončil, ale **čas, v ktorom prebiehal**, stále **trvá**

I have written 2 letters **today**. Dnes som napísal 2 listy.

always	vždy	since	od (toho času)
never	nikdy	for	počas
ever	(nie)kedy v otázke	this year	tento rok
already	už	lately	v poslednom čase
yet	ešte, už	recently	nedávno
not yet	ešte nie	how long	ako dlho
just	práve	since when	odkedy

VÝRAZY SPÁJAJÚCE SA S PREDPRÍTOMNÝM ČASOM

PROBLÉMY

a) ak je vo vete **presne určený čas** v minulosti, musíme použiť **minulý čas**

I have seen it.

Videl som to.

I saw it yesterday.

Videl som to včera.

b) **ak nie je určené, ako dlho dej trvá**, musíme použiť **jednoduchý prítomný čas**

She has known Charles for 2 years.

Pozná Karola 2 roky.

She knows Charles.

Pozná Karola.

c) ak je následok deja dôležitejší ako samotný dej, používame predprítomný čas. Ak je dôležitejší dej ako jeho následok, používame minulé čas.

I have washed the car. Now it is clean.

Umyl som auto. Teraz je čisté.

I washed the car and cut the grass.

Umyl som auto a pokosil trávu.

Predprítomný čas

Cvičenie 9.2. Utvorte vety v jednoduchom predprítomnom čase.

- The windows are clean. James them CLEAN
- The fence is red. Mrs Cunningham it. PAINT
- The children are in bed. They to bed. GO
- The sun is shining. It raining. STOP
- Look! Somebody the vase. BREAK
- It's Peter's birthday tomorrow. I him a present. BUY
- Where is my wallet? Oh, I it. LOSE
- Brigit doesn't have her passport. She it at home. LEAVE
- Mr White feels lonely. Her wife him. LEAVE
- I know it. They me. TELL

Cvičenie 9.3. Dajte slovesá do správneho času.

- They (KNOW) each other for ages.
- They (HAVE) a new car.
- I (NOT SEE) him recently.
- They (MEET) five years ago and they (BE) together since.
- How long you (HAVE) this dog?
- What (HAPPEN)? He (BREAK) his arm last week.
- Shakespeare (WRITE) 37 theatre plays in all.
- Jeremy (NOT ARRIVE) yet.
- When it (HAPPEN)? Last year.
- Jim (NEVER SMOKE) a cigar.
- you (EVER EAT) sushi?
- She (BE) sick since she (RETURN) from Greece.
- They (NEVER BE) to/in the USA but last year they (BE) to/in Canada.

- I (SPEND) three months in the mountains this year.
- (BE) Kim married? Yes, she (BE) married for a year.

b) PRIEBEHOVÝ

TVORENIE

HAVE/HAS + BEEN + PRÍČASTIE PRÍTOMNÉ

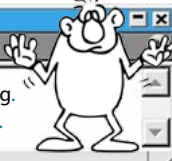
I **have been waiting** here for 2 hours.

Čakám tu 2 hodiny.

He **has been talking** for 5 minutes. Rozpráva 5 minút.

vysvetlivka

I /you/we/they	have been running.
He/she/it	has been running.



OTÁZKA


Otázka sa tvorí inverziou (zmenou slovosledu).

HAVE/HAS + PODMET + BEEN + PRÍČASTIE PRÍTOM.

Have (you) **been waiting** long? Čakáš dlho?
Has (she) **been sleeping** long? Spí dlho?

zaujímavosť

long = for a long time



KRÁTKÉ ODPOVEDE

Odpovedáme pomocným slovesom **have/has**, v zápore **haven't/hasn't**.

Have you been waiting for a long time? Čakáte dlho?
+ Yes, we **have**. Áno, čakáme.
- No, we **haven't**. Nie, nečakáme.

Has she been sleeping long? *Spí dlho?*

+ Yes, she **has**.

Áno, spí.

● No, she **hasn't**.

Nie, nespí.

ZÁPOR

Zápor tvoríme pridaním slova **not** k pomocnému slovesu **have/has**. V zápore sa často používajú skrátené tvary

haven't/hasn't.

PODMET + **HAVEN'T** + BEEN + PRÍČASTIEPRÍTOMNÉ
(HAVE NOT)/
/HASN'T
(HAS NOT)

She **hasn't** (has not) been learning English for a long time.


Neučí sa po anglicky dlho.

They **haven't** (have not) been sitting here for an hour.

Nesedia tu hodinu.

vysvetlivka

have not = haven't
has not = hasn't



ťahák

+ He **has been learning** English for 5 years.
? How long **has he been learning** English?
- He **hasn't been learning** English for 5 years.



POUŽITIE

a) na vyjadrenie **deja**, ktorý sa začal v minulosti a stále **trvá**.
Čas trvania deja býva zvyčajne určený výrazmi **since** a **for**.

He has been standing here for 20 minutes.

Stojí tu 20 minút.

! Ak nie je vo vete uvedené, ako dlho dej trvá, musíme použiť prítomný priebehový čas.

She is sleeping.

Spí.

She has been sleeping for an hour.

Spí hodinu.

! Pri slovesách, ktoré netvorí priebehový čas, musíme použiť jednoduchý predprítomný čas.

I have had the same car for 5 years.

Mám to isté auto (už) 5 rokov.

b) na vyjadrenie deja, ktorý sa síce v minulosti skončil, ale jeho **následky** zasahujú do prítomnosti

They have been working hard and now they are really tired.

Dlho pracovali a teraz sú skutočne unavení.

c) na vyjadrenie deja, ktorý sa skončil, ale **čas**, v ktorom prebiehal, **trvá**

I have been reading all morning.

Čítal som celé ráno. (Stále je ráno.)

d) v otázke **how long**

How long have you been driving? *Ako dlho šoféruješ?*

! Pri slovesách, ktoré netvorí priebehový čas, musíme použiť jednoduchý predprítomný čas.

How long have they known it? *Ako dlho to vedia?*

Cvičenie 9.4. Dajte slovesá do správneho času.

- 1) It since we
RAIN/WAKE UP
- 2) The man here for two hours.
STAND
- 3) you
here for a long time? WAIT
- 4) She since
she the news. CRY/HEAR
- 5) You look exhausted. you
.....? RUN
- 6) My brother the same job since
he from university.
DO/GRADUATE
- 7) Kate French all her life. TEACH
- 8) How long Tom
..... with Judith? GO OUT
- 9) the children still
.....? SLEEP
- 10) You are filthy. Of course, I our
car! REPAIR

Predprítomný čas

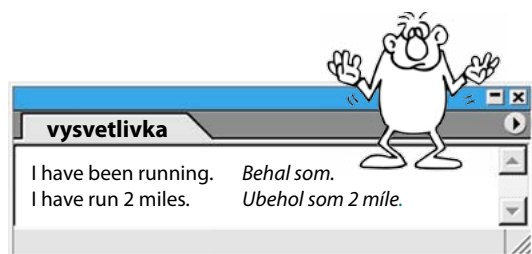
PREDPRÍTOMNÝ ČAS JEDNODUCHÝ

VERZUS PREDPRÍTOMNÝ ČAS PRIEBEHOVÝ

Predprítomný čas jednoduchý používame na vyjadrenie ukončeného deja. V slovenčine zodpovedá dokonavému vidu. Predprítomný čas priebehový vyjadruje neukončený dej. V slovenčine zodpovedá nedokonavému vidu.

Who has eaten my porridge? *Kto mi zjedol kašu?*

Who has been eating my porridge? *Kto jedol z mojej kaše?*



Cvičenie 9.5. Vyberte správny čas.

- 1) The bottle is empty! Who HAS DRUNK/HAS BEEN DRINKING the wine?
- 2) They HAVE JUST BEEN MOVING/HAVE JUST MOVED house. The new house is lovely, isn't it?
- 3) I am tired. I AM WORKING/HAVE BEEN WORKING hard all day.
- 4) Where is Jim? He WENT/HAS GONE shopping.
- 5) How long HAVE YOU BEEN LEARNING/HAVE YOU LEARNT English?
- 6) Has she BEEN LEARNING/LEARNT all the new vocabulary yet?
- 7) You can borrow the newspaper. I HAVE ALREADY READ/HAVE ALREADY BEEN READING it.
- 8) Why are you red? I HAVE SUNBATHED/HAVE BEEN SUNBATHING.
- 9) You look happy. Yes, I HAVE JUST BOUGHT/HAVE JUST BEEN BUYING new clothes.
- 10) Bob HAS BEEN DRAWING/HAS DRAWN five pictures.

10. Predminulý čas – Plusquamperfektum

a) JEDNODUCHÝ

TVORENIE

HAD + PRÍČASTIE MINULÉ


I **had lost** the key so I couldn't get in.
Stratil som kľúč a nemohol som sa dostať domov.

Príčasie minulé sa tvorí pridaním prípony **-ed** k infinitívu pravidelných slovies.

Pri nepravidelných sa tvorí nepravidelne, pozri Prehľad nepravidelných slovies na strane 135.


odkaz

Preštuduj si nepravidelné slovesá na strane 135.



vysvetlivka

I had	= I'd
you had	= you'd
he had	= he'd
she had	= she'd
we had	= we'd
you had	= you'd
they had	= they'd



OTÁZKA

Otázka sa tvorí inverziou (zmenou slovosledu).

HAD + PODMET + PRÍČASTIE MINULÉ

Had Jane **left** before you arrived?
Odišla Jana predtým, ako si prišiel?

ťahák

+ She **had gone**.
? **Had she gone?**



KRÁTKE ODPOVEDE

Odpovedáme pomocným slovesom **had**, v zápore **hadn't**.

Had the children gone to bed when you arrived?

Boli už deti v posteli, keď si prišiel?

+ Yes, they **had**. *Áno, boli.*

- No, they **hadn't**. *Nie, neboli.*

ZÁPOR


Zápor sa tvorí pridaním slova **not** k pomocnému slovesu **had**. V zápore sa často používa skrátenejší tvar **hadn't**.

PODMET + HADN'T (HAD NOT) + PRÍČASTIE MINULÉ

I flew to Paris last week. I **hadn't (had not)** flown before.
Minulý týždeň som letel do Paríža. Predtým som nikdy neletel.


vysvetlivka

had not = hadn't



poznámka

V angličtine platí pravidlo jedného záporu.
I **hadn't flown** before. =
= I **had never flown** before.



POUŽITIE

a) vyjadruje **dej**, ktorý bol **ukončený pred určitým okamihom v minulosti**

By Monday all the tourists **had left** the hotel.
Do pondelka (už) všetci turisti opustili hotel.

b) vyjadruje **dej**, ktorý sa odohral v minulosti **pred iným dejom**

I **had left** before she arrived. *Odišiel som, skôr ako prišla.*

Predminulý čas


c) vyjadruje **dej**, ktorý **sa začal pred iným dejom** či okamihom v minulosti a **trval aj v tej chvíli** (pri slovesách, ktoré netvoria priebehový čas)

When they got married they had known each other for 5 years. Poznali sa už 5 rokov, keď sa brali.

zaujímavosť

John **has broken** his leg. He **can't walk**.
NOW

John **had broken** his leg. He **couldn't walk**.
LAST MONTH



VÝRAZY SPÁJAJÚCE SA S PREDMINULÝM ČASOM

before	(skôr) než, predtým
after	potom, čo
already	už
just	práve
for	počas
since	od (toho času)
till/until	dokiaľ/nie
when	keď
by	do
by the time	v tom čase
never	nikdy

Cvičenie 10.1. Napište vety v predminulom čase. Použite slovesá z rámčeka.

be invited	not see	be	break into	have
go	leave	start	not fly	wash

- James didn't want to drink.
He already seven beers before.
- They invited us to the party, but we couldn't come.
We to another party.
- Yesterday Jill arrived home and everything was upside down.
Somebody her house.
- Fiona arrived at the meeting late.
The meeting already

- I flew to the USA last month. It was my first flight.
I before.
- Lucy and Lucas got divorced last week.
They together only for two years.
- Yesterday I arrived home at 10. The children were asleep.
The children to bed before I arrived.
- We couldn't take photos.
We our camera at home.
- It started to rain.
I was angry, because I just the car.
- I met an interesting boy last night. I didn't know him.
I him before.

b) PRIEBEHOVÝ


TVORENIE

HAD + BEEN + PRÍČASTIE PRÍTOMNÉ

I **had been waiting** for 2 hours before they arrived.
Čakal som 2 hodiny, kým prišli.

zaujímavosť

They were dancing when I arrived at the party.
They had been dancing for an hour when I arrived at the party.



OTÁZKA

Otázka sa tvorí inverziou (zmenou slovosledu).

HAD + PODMET + BEEN + PRÍČASTIE PRÍTOMNÉ

Had (you) **been waiting** long before they arrived?
Čakal si dlho, kým prišli?

zaujímavosť

long = for a long time



KRÁTKÉ ODPOVEDE

Odpovedáme pomocným slovesom **had**, v zápore **hadn't**.

Had you been waiting for a long time before they arrived?

Čakali ste dlho, kým prišli?

+ Yes, we **had**.

Áno, čakali.

- No, we **hadn't**.

Nie, nečakali.

ZÁPORA

Zápor tvoríme pridaním slova **not** k pomocnému slovesu **had**. V zápore sa často používajú skrátené tvary **hadn't**.

PODMET + **HADN'T** + BEEN + PRÍČASTIE PRÍTOMNÉ
(HAD NOT)

She **hadn't** been learning French for a long time before she went to Paris.


Neučila sa dlho po francúzsky pred tým, ako cestovala do Paríža.

ťahák

+ He **had been learning** English for 5 years before he moved to LA.

? How long **had he been learning** English before he moved to LA?

- He **hadn't been learning** English for a long time before he moved to LA.



POUŽITIE

a) na vyjadrenie **deja**, ktorý prebiehal **určitý čas pred iným dejom** v minulosti. Čas, ako dlho dej prebiehal, je určený výrazmi **since** a **for**.

They had been learning Spanish for a year before they went to Madrid. *Kým cestovali do Madridu, rok sa učili po španielsky.*

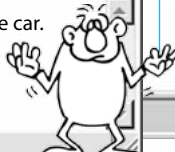
b) na vyjadrenie **deja**, ktorý prebiehal **určitý čas pred iným dejom** v minulosti a jeho **následky** zasahujú do prítomnosti

I was tired. I had been jogging. *Bol som unavený. Behal som.*

vysvetlivka

Jack was dirty. He had been repairing the car.
Jack bol špinavý. Opravoval auto.

We could go by car. Jack had repaired it.
Mohli sme ísť autom. Jack ho opravil.



Cvičenie 10.2. Dajte slovesá do správneho času.

- Mrs Smith for the company for 30 years before she
WORK/RETIRE
- It for two weeks when we
..... in Rome. RAIN/ARRIVE
- The boys football for an hour when it to rain. PLAY/START
- I tired yesterday.
I in the garden all day.
BE/WORK
- Now wonder James an accident last night. He for six hours.
HAVE/DRIVE
- By the time we there, they
..... for us for 30 minutes. GET/WAIT
- I French for a while before I they all were English.
SPEAK/REALISE
- I to the lecture for an hour when I I already it.
LISTEN/REALISE/HEAR
- Hannah for 3 hours when her husband from the pub.
SLEEP/COME
- She never before, but yesterday she
20 cigarettes. SMOKE/SMOKE

11. Budúcnosť

a) JEDNODUCHÝ BUDÚCI ČAS

TVORENIE

WILL + INFINITÍV BEZ TO

I **will do it**. *Urobím to.*

! Tvar **shall** sa používa iba v prvej osobe jednotného a množného čísla. Jeho použitie je však na ústupe. V otázke vyjadruje **shall** vždy slabú povinnosť. O ďalšom použití **shall** pozri kapitolu Modálne slovesá.

vysvetlivka		
I will	=	I'll
you will	=	you'll
he will	=	he'll
she will	=	she'll
it will	=	it'll
we will	=	we'll
you will	=	you'll
they will	=	they'll

OTÁZKA

Otázka sa tvorí inverziou (zmenou slovosledu).

WILL + PODMET + INFINITÍV BEZ TO

Will **you** **help** me? *Pomôžeš mi? Pomôžete mi?*

ťahák		
+ She will come .	<i>Príde.</i>	
● Will she come ?	<i>Príde?</i>	

KRÁTKE ODPOVEDE

Odpovedáme pomocným slovesom **will**, v zápore **won't**.

Will you lend me money? *Požičaš mi peniaze?*

+ Yes, I **will**. *Áno, požičiam.*

● No, I **won't**. *Nie, nepožičiam.*

ZÁPORA

zapamätaj si	
will not	= won't

Zápor sa tvorí pridaním slova **not** k pomocnému slovesu **will**. V zápore sa často používa skrátený tvar **won't**.

PODMET + **WON'T**(WILL NOT) + SLOVESOV INFINITÍV (WILL NOT)

I **won't** (will not) win. *Nevyhrám.*

POUŽITIE

a) na vyjadrenie **náhleho rozhodnutia**

I will open the window. It's hot in here.

Otvorím okno. Je tu horúco.

b) na vyjadrenie **jednoduchej informácie** o budúcnosti, **názoru**

His parents will be there as well. *Jeho rodičia tam budú tiež.*

I don't think he will come. *Myslím, že nepríde.*

c) na vyjadrenie **predpovede**

There will be some thunderstorms tomorrow.

Zajtra budú búrky.

d) na vyjadrenie **ponuky, hrozby, sľubu**

I will help him.

Pomôžem mu.

e) na vyjadrenie **prítomného predpokladu**

This will be his car.

Toto bude jeho auto.

f) v **otázke** je formou **zdvorilej žiadosti**

Will you **help** me, please?

Pomôžeš mi, prosím?

b) BUDÚCI ČAS PRIEBEHOVÝ

TVORENIE

WILL + BE + PRÍČASTIE PRÍTOMNÉ

I **will be waiting**. *Budem čakať.*

OTÁZKA

Otázka sa tvorí inverziou (zmenou slovosledu).

WILL + PODMET + BE + PRÍČASTIE PRÍTOMNÉ

Will (you) **be waiting**? *Budeš čakať?*

ZÁPOR

Zápor sa tvorí pridaním slova **not** k pomocnému slovesu **will**. V zápore sa často používa skrátenejší tvar **won't**.

PODMET + WON'T + BE + PRÍČASTIE PRÍTOMNÉ
(WILL NOT)

I **won't** (will not) be waiting. *Nebudem čakať.*

POUŽITIE


Dej bude prebiehať v určitom čase alebo počas určitého času.

This time tomorrow they will be leaving.

Zajtra o takomto čase budú odchádzať.

vysvetlivka

YESTERDAY • AT 5 • We **were playing** tennis.
NOW • AT 5 • We **are having** dinner.
TOMORROW • AT 5 •
We **will be lying** on the beach.



c) INÉ SPÔSOBY VYJADROVANIA BUDÚCNOSTI

1) BE GOING TO


TVORENIE

BE + GOING + TO + INFINITÍV

I **am going to** buy a new car. *Kúpim si nové auto.*
He **is going to** wear a suit. *Oblečie si oblek.*

vysvetlivka

I am going to	=	I'm going to
you are going to	=	you're going to
he is going to	=	he's going to
she is going to	=	she's going to
it is going to	=	it's going to
we are going to	=	we're going to
you are going to	=	you're going to
they are going to	=	they're going to




OTÁZKA


Otázka sa tvorí inverziou (zmenou slovosledu).


BE + PODMET + GOING + TO + INFINITÍV

Are (you) **going to** fly there? *Poletíš tam?*
What **is** (he) **going to** do? *Čo bude robiť?*

ťahák





 He **is going to** move to the country.

 **Is he going to** move to the country?

KRÁTKE ODPOVEDE

Odpovedáme pomocným slovesom **am/is/are**, v zápore **m' not/isn't/aren't**.

Is she going to buy it?	<i>Kúpi si to?</i>
 Yes, she is .	<i>Áno, kúpi.</i>
 No, she isn't .	<i>Nie, nekúpi.</i>

ZÁPOR

Zápor sa tvorí pridaním slova **not** k slovesu **to be** v príslušnom tvare. V zápore sa často používajú skrátenejšie tvary **m' not/isn't/aren't**.

PODMET + BE NOT + GOING + TO + INFINITÍV

Budúcnosť

They **aren't** (are not) going to dance. *Nebudú tancovať.*
 I'm **not** (am not) going to study. *Nebudem študovať.*

vysvetlivka

I am not going to	= I'm not going to
you are not going to	= you aren't going to
he is not going to	= he isn't going to
she is not going to	= she isn't going to
it is not going to	= it isn't going to
we are not going to	= we aren't going to
you are not going to	= you aren't going to
they are not going to	= they aren't going to

POUŽITIE

a) plán

I am going to study maths.
Mám v úmysle študovať matematiku.
 They are going to get married next year.
Majú v úmysle na budúci rok sa vziať.

b) predpoklad založený na objektívnych okolnostiach

Look at the sky. It's going to be another sunny day.
Pozri sa na nebo. Zasa bude pekný deň.

zaujímavosť

It will be sunny today.
*Dnes bude slnečno. **predpoveď počasia***
It's going to be sunny today.
*Dnes bude slnečno. **nebo je bez mrakov***

2) PRÍTOMNÝ ČAS PRIEBEHOVÝ

• istá budúcnosť

They **are leaving** tomorrow. They have already bought the tickets. *Zajtra odchádzajú. Už si kúpili cestovné lístky.*

odkaz

Preštudujte si kapitolu Prítomný čas priebehový na strane 51.

3) PRÍTOMNÝ ČAS JEDNODUCHÝ

• cestovné poriadky, rozvrhy, programy

The bus **leaves** at 5. *Autobus odchádza o piatej.*
 English **finishes** at 11:30. *Angličtina sa končí o pol dvanástej.*
 The movie **starts** at 7. *Kino sa začína o siedmej.*

odkaz

Preštudujte si kapitolu Prítomný čas jednoduchý na strane 49.

4) BE ABOUT TO + INFINITÍV

BE ON THE POINT OF + GERUNDIUM

• bezprostredná budúcnosť

I **am about to** leave. *Už odchádzam.*
 I **am on the point of** leaving. *Som na odchode.*

Cvičenie 11.1. *Doplňte do viet slovesá z rámčeka v správnom čase.*

sit	have, come	make	pass	play
listen	fly	take	cry	read
ski	not tell	do	leave	post

- This time next week we in the Alps.
- Why are you buying flour? I dumplings.
- I can't go to the cinema tonight. I cards with my neighbours.
- I think I a taxi. It's late.
- What you on Sunday? Nothing special.
- Do you think she the exam?
- Look at that little boy. He
- What time our bus ? At 4:30.
- Don't forget to post the letter, please. I promise, I it as soon as possible.
- Next Thursday they to Moscow.
- Have you read the newspaper? Not yet, I it after breakfast.

- 12) Keep it secret! Of course, I
anybody, I swear.
- 13) We a party next Saturday.
..... you?
- 14) Why is he turning the radio on?
He to the news.
- 15) This time tomorrow she on the
plane to Stockholm.

Cvičenie 11.2. *Vyberte správnu možnosť.*

- 1) I don't have any money on me. I WILL/AM GOING TO
lend you some.
- 2) Will you PASS/BE PASSING the newsagent when you
are out?
- 3) Look at that mess in your room! When WILL YOU/ARE
YOU GOING TO tidy up?
- 4) I don't think they WILL HELP/ARE HELPING you.
- 5) Look at those clouds. It WILL/IS GOING TO rain.
- 6) History WILL START/STARTS at 8:30.
- 7) Where are you going? I AM GOING TO/WILL buy some
fruit.
- 8) If you do it again, I WILL/AM GOING TO tell your mum.
- 9) Oh dear, it's almost midnight. I WILL/AM GOING TO be
late.
- 10) I am sure, you WILL/ARE GOING TO like it.

12. Predbudúci čas

a) JEDNODUCHÝ

TVORENIE

WILL + HAVE + PRÍČASTIE MINULÉ

She **will have done** it before we arrive.
Bude to mať urobené, skôr ako tam prídeme.

Príčastie minulé sa tvorí pridaním prípony **-ed** k infinitívu pravidelných slovies.
 Pri nepravidelných slovesách sa tvorí nepravidelne, pozri Nepravidelné slovesá na strane 135.



odkaz

Preštuduj si nepravidelné slovesá na strane 135.

OTÁZKA

Otázka sa tvorí inverziou (zmenou slovosledu).

WILL + PODMET + HAVE + PRÍČASTIE MINULÉ

Will (she) **have done** it before we arrive?
Bude to mať urobené, kým prídeme?

ťahák

- + She **will have done** it.
- ? **Will** she **have done** it?



ZÁPOR

Tvorí sa pridaním slova **not** k pomocnému slovesu **will**.
 V zápore sa často používa skrátený tvar **won't**.

PODMET + WON'T + HAVE + PRÍČASTIE MINULÉ
 (WILL NOT)

She **won't** (will not) **have done** it before we arrive.

vysvetlivka

will not = won't



POUŽITIE

- na vyjadrenie deja, ktorý sa **skončí** v budúcnosti **pred určitým časom** alebo pred **iným dejom**

I will have finished it by the time you come.
Budem to mať hotové, kým prídeš.

VÝRAZY SPÁJAJÚCE SA S PREDBUDÚCIM ČASOM

before kým, ako
by the time až, kým
until dokiaľ

Po týchto výrazoch je v angličtine prítomný, nie budúci čas. Pozri kapitolu Časové vety na strane 121.

odkaz

Preštuduj si kapitolu
 Časové vety na strane 121.



zaujímavosť

Jane **has known** Peter for 9 years.
Jana sa pozná s Petrom 9 rokov.
 Next year Jane **will have known** Peter for 10 years.
Na budúci rok to bude 10 rokov, čo Jana pozná Petra.
 Jane **had known** Peter for 5 years before she married him.
Jana poznala Petra 5 rokov, kým si ho vzala.



b) PRIEBEHOVÝ

TVORENIE

WILL + HAVE + BEEN + PRÍČASTIE PRÍTOMNÉ

This time tomorrow we **will have been sitting** on the plane for 3 hours.

Zajtra o takomto čase už budeme 3 hodiny sedieť v lietadle.

OTÁZKA

Otázka sa tvorí inverziou (zmenou slovosledu).

ZÁPOR

Zápor sa tvorí pridaním slova **not** k pomocnému slovesu **will**. V zápore sa často používa skrátený tvar **won't**.

POUŽITIE

- na vyjadrenie budúceho deja, ktorý trvá až do určitého okamihu v budúcnosti. Často je uvedené, ako dlho dej trvá.

When you come home she will have been waiting there for an hour.

Keď prídeš domov, bude tam už hodinu čakať.

PREBUDÚCI ČAS A BUDÚCI ČAS PRIEBEHOVÝ

At 7 tomorrow she will be watching a soap opera.

Zajtra o siedmej sa bude pozerat' na seriál.

At 8 tomorrow the soap opera will have finished.

Zajtra o ôsmej už bude po seriáli.

Cvičenie 12.1. *Doplňte do viet slovesá v predbudúcom čase jednoduchom alebo priebehovom.*

- By 7 he maths for ten hours. LEARN
- By the end of July they the project. FINISH
- Before she arrives, he the tickets. BUY
- By the end of this year I for this company for 15 years. WORK
- In April they together for 20 years. BE
- By the time he arrives home his wife lunch for him PREPARE
- I hope I enough money to buy

a new bike before the summer.

SAVE

- Next year we English for 10 years. LEARN
- My parents in the same town for 15 years. LIVE
- By the time you get there everybody LEAVE

Test 6

- What on Sunday? I tennis with Tom.
A) do you do, play
B) are you doing, am playing
C) will you do, will play
D) are you doing, will play
- Next year they here for 20 years.
A) live
B) will be living
C) will live
D) will have been living
- We beach volleyball when it raining.
A) played, started
B) were playing, started
C) were playing, was starting
D) played, was starting
- John single since Mary him last year.
A) is, left
B) has been, has left
C) has been, left
D) is, has left
- When we to the concert, it
A) got, had already started
B) got, has already started
C) had got, started
D) has got, started
- When?
A) it happened
B) did it happened
C) did it happen
D) does it happened
- What happened? Nothing, everything is OK.
A) is
B) has
C) does
D) had
- The bag is heavy. I carry it for you?
A) Will
B) Do
C) Am
D) Shall
- Look at the picture! It down.
A) will fall
B) is going to fall

Predbudúci čas

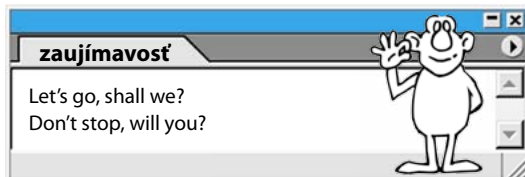
- C) does fall D) will be falling
- 10) The man at the corner for an hour before he the way.
A) has been standing, asked B) was standing, asked
C) stood, asked
D) had been standing, asked
- 11) James? Yes, we each other for five years.
A) Do you know, have known
B) Have you known, have known
C) Do you know, know D) Have you known, know
- 12) When and where your wife?
A) were you meeting B) did you met
C) did you meet D) you did meet
- 13) Oh no, I my phone at home.
A) have leave B) have left C) left D) had left
- 14) Julia her credit card last Monday and since then she problems with money.
A) has lost, has has B) lost, had
C) lost, has has D) lost, has had
- 15) We Wales but two years ago we Scotland.
A) have never been to, were in
B) had never been to, were in
C) have never been to, have been to
D) had never been to, have been to
- 16) Graham his car happily when the police for speeding.
A) drove, stopped B) drove, was stopping
C) was driving, was stopping
D) was driving, stopped
- 17) We the holiday and next Wednesday we for Corfu.
A) had just booked, will leave
B) have just booked, will leave
C) have just booked, we are going to leave
D) have just booked, are leaving
- 18) How long the piano? I last year.
A) do you play, started B) are you playing, started
C) have you been playing, started
- D) have you played, have started
- 19) The box is empty! Children, who all the chocolates?
A) ate B) has been eating
C) has eaten D) is eating
- 20) What would you like to drink? I a cup of tea.
A) 'm going to have B) 'll have
C) 'm having D) have

13. Krátke zisťovacie otázky

She is an actress, **isn't she?** *Je herečka, však?*

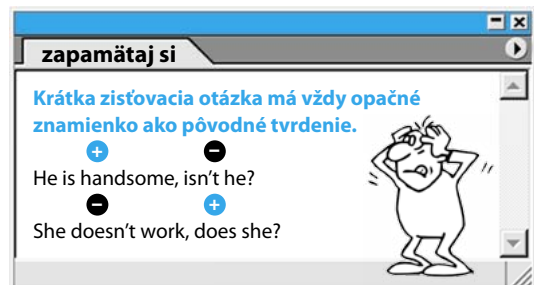
- zodpovedá slovenskému „však, pravda, všakže“
- používame pomocné alebo modálne sloveso
- ak je tvrdenie kladné, krátka zisťovacia otázka je záporná a naopak

Tvrdenie	Zisťovacia otázka
I am pretty,	aren't I?
I am not stupid,	am I?
It is theirs,	isn't it?
It isn't yours,	is it?
This is your bag,	isn't it?
She works a lot,	doesn't she?
We don't know it,	do we?
She was sick,	wasn't she?
He wasn't with her,	was he?
Tom sold it,	didn't he?
Jane didn't ask,	did she?
They have understood,	haven't they?
Kate will be there,	won't she?
They must keep it,	mustn't they?
They needn't worry,	need they?
You can't speak French,	can you?
He should come,	shouldn't he?
She shouldn't have done it,	should she?
There are three trees in our garden,	aren't there?
There isn't a direct train to Nettlestead,	is there?
You would do it,	wouldn't you?
Do it,	will you?
Don't forget,	will you?
Let's go,	shall we?



Cvičenie 13.1. Doplňte do viet zisťovacie otázky.

- 1) There is no room left,
- 2) This wasn't your decision,
- 3) Don't talk nonsense,
- 4) I am such a smart boy,
- 5) They didn't hear that,
- 6) You have got a brother,
- 7) Stop it,
- 8) Let's meet in front of the cinema,
- 9) You never know what to say,
- 10) Paul has never liked this music,
- 11) I saw him last night,
- 12) Val has left her husband,
- 13) He needn't be there,
- 14) They will never forgive me,
- 15) You wouldn't cheat,
- 16) They aren't allowed to smoke at home,
- 17) You know why,
- 18) She shouldn't have gone there,
- 19) Lucas has a new motorbike,
- 20) We all understand it,



14. Slovesá netvoriace priebehový čas

a) slovesá vyjadrujúce **postoj, názor alebo pranie**

think	<i>myslieť (domnievať sa)</i>
know	<i>vedieť, poznať</i>
understand	<i>rozumieť, chápať</i>
mean	<i>mieniť, znamenať</i>
seem	<i>zdať sa</i>
to appear	<i>javiť sa</i>
wish	<i>želať si</i>
want	<i>chcieť</i>
hope	<i>dúfať</i>
prefer	<i>dávať prednosť</i>
believe	<i>veriť</i>
need	<i>potrebovať</i>
doubt	<i>pochybovať</i>
consider	<i>považovať</i>
realise	<i>uvedomiť si</i>

Niektoré slovesá v inom význame tvoria priebehový čas.

to think	<i>premýšľať, myslieť (na)</i>
to consider	<i>uvažovať (o)</i>
I think you are right.	<i>Myslím, že máš pravdu.</i>
I am thinking.	<i>Premýšľam.</i>

b) slovesá vyjadrujúce **citový vzťah**

like	<i>mať rád, páčiť sa</i>
love	<i>milovať</i>
hate	<i>nenávidieť</i>
mind	<i>prekážať</i>
dislike	<i>nemať rád</i>

c) slovesá **zmyslového vnímania**

see	<i>vidieť</i>
hear	<i>počuť</i>
taste	<i>chutiť</i>
feel	<i>cítiť (hlad)</i>
smell	<i>smrdieť, voňať</i>

zaujímavosť

Po slovesách taste, smell, feel nasleduje prídavné meno.
It tastes good. *Chutí to dobre.*
The rosa smells nice. *Tá ruža pekne vonia.*



pikantnosť

to smell	<i>výdavať vôňu alebo zápach</i>
to smell bad	<i>smrdieť</i>
to smell nice	<i>voňať</i>



Pri slovesách zmyslového vnímania často používame modálne sloveso can, could.

I can see that. *To vidím.*

Niektoré slovesá v inom význame tvoria priebehový čas.

to see	<i>navštíviť, odprevadiť</i>
to smell	<i>ovoniavať</i>
to taste	<i>ochutnávať</i>

The soup tastes horrible. *Tá polievka chutí hrozne.*

She is tasting the soup. *Ochutnáva polievku.*

He can see that. *Vidí to.*

He is seeing his mother in the afternoon.

Popoludní ide navštíviť matku.

pikantnosť

I see.	<i>Aha, chápem.</i>
I can see him.	<i>Vidím ho.</i>
I am seeing him tonight.	
Dnes večer ho navštívím.	



d) slovesá **vlastníctva**

have	<i>mať</i>
belong	<i>patriť</i>
contain	<i>obsahovať</i>

Sloveso have netvorí priebehový čas, ak je použité vo význame vlastníť.

Vo frázach tvorí priebehový čas.

I have a bath in the bathroom. *Mám v kúpeľni vaňu.*

I am having a bath. *Kúpem sa.*

zaujímavosť

Sloveso have vo frázach tvorí priebehový čas.

to have a bath	kúpať sa
to have a shower	sprchovať sa
to have a chat	porozprávať sa
to have a row	pohádať sa
to have a rest	odpočinúť si
to have a swim	zaplávať si
to have a smoke	zafajčiť si
to have breakfast	raňajkovať
to have lunch	obedovať
to have dinner	večerať

At 6 yesterday we were having dinner.
Včera sme večerali o šiestej.

e) **ostatné** slovesá netvoriace priebehový čas

to forget	zabudnúť
to remember	pamätať si, spomenúť si
to consist	skladať sa
to concern	týkať sa
to matter	záležať
to suppose	predpokladať

Cvičenie 14.1. Vyberte správnu možnosť.

- 1) Be quiet! I AM THINKING/THINK.
- 2) The dinner IS SMELLING/SMELLS good.
- 3) I AM FEELING/FEEL hungry.
- 4) Where is Ben? He IS HAVING/HAS a bath.
- 5) I AM NEEDING/NEED a change. I AM THINKING/THINK of changing my job.
- 6) The bread IS TASTING/TASTES of garlic.
- 7) My dad IS SEEING/SEES the dentist next week.
- 8) Why IS SHE SMELLING/DOES SHE SMELL those flowers? They are plastic.
- 9) I AM NOT THINKING/DON'T THINK he IS THINKING/THINKS about his girlfriend at the moment.
- 10) It IS SMELLING/SMELLS good and IS TASTING/TASTES even better.

15. Gerundium

Gerundium má rovnaký tvar ako prídavné príslovie.


INFINITÍV + -ING

sitting

having

odkaz

Preštuduj si zmeny v pravopise prídavných prísloví, pozri kapitolu 7. Prítomný čas na strane 49.



	Prítomné	Minulé
Činné	asking	having asked
Trpné	being asked	having been asked

SLOVESÁ S GERUNDIÁLNOU VÄZBOU

to admit	priznať, pripustiť
to deny	poprieť
to consider	uvažovať o
to enjoy	mať potešenie z
to adore	obdivovať
to fancy	mať rád
to like	mať rád
to love	milovať
to mind	prekážať
to hate	nenávidieť
to suggest	navrhovať
to avoid	vyhnúť sa
to excuse	ospravedlniť
to forgive	odpustiť
to go on	pokračovať
to keep (on)	pokračovať
to stand	znášať
to imagine	predstaviť si
to give up	vzdať sa niečoho
to put off	časovo odložiť
to postpone	časovo odložiť
to risk	riskovať
to regret	ľutovať

They **enjoy dancing**.

Radi tancujú.

I **suggest leaving**.

Navrhujem odísť.

I **can't stand being** told what to do.

Neznášam, keď mi niekto hovorí, čo mám robiť.


He doesn't **mind speaking** in public.

Neprekáža mu rozprávať na verejnosti.

poznámka

Sloveso love má okrem významu milovať aj význam mať niečo veľmi rád. V angličtine nie je také expresívne ako v slovenčine.

She loves dancing. Veľmi rada tancuje.




zapamätaj si

Po slovese suggest nesmie na rozdiel od slovenčiny nasledovať infinitív.

He **suggested doing** it again.

Navrhol urobiť to znovu.



zaujímavosť

I like reading. Rád čítam.

I'd like to read. Rád by som si čítal.



Cvičenie 15.1. Doplňte do viet slovesá z rámčeka.

swim	go	get	fly	be	eat	take
have to	sit	steal	meet	smoke	stand	

- I enjoy new people. That is what I like about my job.
- I always try to avoid to the UK. I prefer there by ferry.
- Why are you still single? Have you ever considered married?
- Why are you always walking with the headphones on? You risk run over by something.

- 5) I hate get up early.
- 6) Somebody was ringing. They kept their lunch and didn't answer the door.
- 7) Let's have a smoke. Don't you know I have just given up ?
- 8) Our trains are so dirty. I prefer to
- 9) The robber admitted the money but he denied the credit card.
- 10) The water was cold. We didn't fancy in it.

SLOVESÁ S GERUNDIÁLNOU VÄZBOU PO PREDLOŽKE

to accuse of	obviniť z
to be afraid of	báť sa
to be fond of	mať rád
to be capable of	byť schopný
to look forward to	tešiť sa na
to prevent from	zabrániť v
to stop (from)	zabrániť v
to be proud of	byť pyšný na
to be used to	byť zvyknutý na
to succeed in	uspieť v
to congratulate on	gratulovať k
to insist on	trvať na
to apologise for	ospravedlniť sa za
to suspect of	podozrievať z
to rely on	spoliehať sa na
to forgive for	prepáčiť

I hope she will **succeed in solving** the problem.
Dúfam, že sa jej podarí vyriešiť ten problém.
 They **suspect him of being** involved in it.
Podozrievajú ho, že v tom bol zapletený.
 Would the salary **prevent you from taking** the job?
Bol by plat dôvodom na odmietnutie tej práce?

vysvetlivka


Tam, kde sa môže použiť podstatné meno, môže sa použiť aj gerundium.

I love apples. *Mám veľmi rád jablká.*

I love swimming. *Veľmi rád plávam.*


I look forward to the party. *Teším sa na večierok.*

I look forward to meeting him.
Teším sa, že sa s ním uvidím.




zapamätaj si

Pozor na častú chybu.
 Hook forward to see you:
 I look forward to seeing you.
Teším sa, že sa uvidíme.
To nie je v tomto prípade
 infinitívna častica, ale **predložka**.



pikantnosť

I look forward to hearing
 from you soon.
Teším sa na Vašu odpoveď.
Fráza používajúca sa na konci listu.



Cvičenie 15.2. Doplňte do viet predložky a slovesá v správnom tvare.

- 1) I apologise late.
- 2) All his classmates congratulated him the exam.
- 3) Would a rise in pay prevent you this job?
- 4) Jane was afraid robbed, so she took a taxi.
- 5) They accused the man one million.
- 6) She didn't spend any money last night because he insisted for the lunch.
- 7) The police stopped all the vehicles into the street.
- 8) Forgive me, but how much did you pay for this beautiful skirt?
- 9) I was there, believe me. Why are you suspecting me there?
- 10) I look forward you soon.

SLOVESÁ S GERUNDIÁLNOU AJ INFINITÍVNOU VÄZBOU BEZ ZMENY VÝZNAMU

like	mať rád	begin	začať
love	milovať	start	začať
hate	nenávidieť		

It started to rain. = It started raining. *Začalo pršať.*

Gerundium

Niektoré slovesá majú iný význam, keď po nich nasleduje gerundium, a iný význam, keď po nich nasleduje infinitív.

TRY

try + gerundium skúsiť

try + infinitív snažiť sa

He **tried counting** sheep, but it didn't help.

Skúsil počítať ovččky, ale nepomohlo to.

He **tried to push** it, but it was too heavy.

Snažil sa to posunúť, ale bolo to príliš ťažké.

STOP

stop + gerundium prestať

stop + infinitív zastaviť sa

She **stopped smoking** three years ago.

Pred 3 rokmi prestala fajčiť.

She **stopped to have a smoke**.

Zastavila sa, aby si zafajčila.

FORGET

forget + gerundium zabudnúť, že

forget + infinitív zabudnúť niečo urobiť

I almost **forgot having** met him last night.

Takmer som zabudol, že som ho včera večer stretol.

I forgot to lock the door.

Zabudol som zamknúť dvere.

REMEMBER

remember + gerundium pamätať si, že

remember + infinitív pripomenúť si niečo

I remember posting the letter.

Pamätám si, že som ten list poslal.

I must remember to post the letter.

Musím si pripomenúť poslať ten list.

HELP

can't help + gerundium nemôcť si pomôcť

help + infinitív pomôcť niečo urobiť

He **couldn't help laughing**. *Nemohol sa zdržať smiechu.*

He **helped me (to) tidy up**. *Pomohol mi upratať.*

REGRET

regret + gerundium ľutovať, že sa niečo stalo

regret + infinitív ľutovať, že sa niečo stane

I regret saying that. *Ľutujem, že som to povedal.*

We **regret to inform** you that the train will be delayed.

S ľútosťou vás musíme informovať, že vlak bude mať meškanie.

NEED

The grass **needs cutting**. = The grass **needs to be cut**.

Tá tráva potrebuje pokosiť.

Cvičenie 15.3. Dajte slovesá do správneho tvaru.

- 1) You look scruffy. Your coat needs
CLEAN
- 2) John was so funny. We couldn't help
LAUGH
- 3) I regret her so many bad things.
TELL
- 4) Jim, don't forget me.
CALL
- 5) My granny stopped last year.
WORK
- 6) They will never forget in the Alps for the first time.
SKI
- 7) Will you help us this wardrobe?
It's heavy.
MOVE
- 8) We regret the cancellation of flight MO 102 to Moscow.
ANNOUNCE
- 9) I remember the door.
LOCK
- 10) I have never tried
WINDSURF

GERUNDIÁLNE FRÁZY

The film is **worth watching**.

Ten film stojí za pozretie.

It's **no use doing** it. *Nemá cenu to robiť.*

There's **no point in having** your own car.

Nemá zmysel mať vlastné auto.

We **had difficulty finding** the pub.

Mali sme problém tú krčmu nájsť.

It's **a waste of time waiting** here.

Čakať tu je strata času.

Buying it would be **a waste of money**.

Kúpiť to by boli vyhodené peniaze.

They were too **busy preparing** their holiday.

Mali veľa práce s prípravou dovolenky.

Let's **go fishing**. *Podme na ryby.*

I feel like having a snack. *Niečo by som zjedol.*

Cvičenie 15.4. Spojte začiatky a konce viet.

- | | |
|--------------------------|--|
| 1) It's no use | A) a waste of money. |
| 2) There's no point | B) doing other things. |
| 3) Do you feel | C) crying over spilt milk. |
| 4) The film is worth | D) like having dinner out? |
| 5) Watching the film was | E) a waste of time. |
| 6) Buying a new car | F) like going there with you. |
| every year is | |
| 7) I hope you will have | G) finding our house. |
| no difficulty | |
| 8) I don't feel | H) in getting up early if you don't have to. |
| | |
| 9) Let's go | I) seeing. |
| 10) Sorry we didn't help | J) swimming. |
| you. We were busy | |

PREKLADANIE GERUNDIA DO SLOVENČINY

a) infinitívom

It stopped raining. *Prestalo pršať.*

b) slovesným podstatným menom

The book is worth reading. *Tá kniha stojí za prečítanie.*

c) vedľajšou vetou

I remember having read the book before.

Pamätám sa, že som tú knihu už predtým čítal.

d) prechodníkom

- prítomným pre dva súbežné deje, v angličtine vyjadrené prítomným gerundiom

Sitting on the chair, he fell asleep. *Zaspal, sediac na stoličke.*

- minulým pre dva nesúbežné deje, v angličtine vyjadrené minulým gerundiom

Having got the information, he left.

Dostanúc tie informácie, odišiel.

Cvičenie 15.5. Preložte nasledujúce vety pomocou gerundiálnej väzby.

- Potom, ako povedal všetko, čo chcel, bez rozlúčenia odišiel.
.....
- Prestalo pršať a začalo snežiť.
.....
- Zabudla, že mi požičala peniaze.
.....
- Pamätám sa, že som to okno zatvoril. Nemá zmysel sa vracat'.
.....
- (Ne)prekážalo by ti tlmiť to rádio?
.....
- Podozrievajú ho, že berie drogy.
.....
- Teším sa, že sa skoro uvidíme.
.....
- Ospravedlňte ma, že som sa oneskoril.
.....
- Neznášam, keď mi niekto hovorí, čo mám robiť.
.....
- Náš byt potrebuje vymaľovať.
.....

16. Infinitív

ČINNÝ

	Jednoduchý	Priebehový
Prítomný	to ask	to be asking
Minulý	to have asked	to have been asking

I would like **to ask** you for it. *Rád by som vás o to požiadal.*
 He seems **to be coming**. *Zdá sa, že práve prichádza.*
 They seem **to have misunderstood** it.
Zdá sa, že to zle pochopili.
 She appears **to have been waiting** there for a long time.
Zdá sa, že tam čakala dlho.


TRPNÝ

	Jednoduchý
Prítomný	to be asked
Minulý	to have been asked

I hope to **be employed** soon.
Dúfam, že budem čoskoro zamestnaný.

vysvetlivka

Prítomný infinitív vyjadruje deje, ktoré prebiehajú súčasne.
 Minulý infinitív vyjadruje nesúbežné deje.
He is said to be busy.
Hovorí (teraz), že má veľa práce (teraz).
He is said to have been busy.
Hovorí (teraz), že mal veľa práce (skôr).




INFINITÍV BEZ TO

a) po **modálnych** a **pomocných** slovesách
 He **can sing**. *Vie spievať.*
 He **must have done** it. *Určite to urobil.*

poznámka

Jediné modálne sloveso, po ktorom nasleduje infinitív s to, je **ought**.
 You should go there. = You ought to go there.



b) po slovesách **zmyslového vnímania** v činnom rode
 hear, see, watch, observe, feel


I **saw** him **come**. *Videl som ho prísť.*

– **ale** –

He was seen **to come**. *Bol videný, ako prišiel.*

zaujímavosť

I saw him come. *Videl som ho prísť.*
 I saw him coming. *Videl som ho prichádzať.*



c) po slovesách **let** a **make**, make iba v činnom rode

She **let** him **leave**. *Dovolila mu odísť.*


They **made** me **do** it. *Prinútili ma to urobiť.*

– **ale** –

I was made to do it. *Bol som prinútený to urobiť.*

zapamätaj si

They **made** me **leave**.
 činný rod – infinitív bez to
I was made to leave.
 trpný rod – infinitív s to




d) po väzbách **I'd better**, **I'd rather**

I'd better **leave**. *Mal by som radšej odísť.*

I'd rather **leave**. *Radšej by som odišiel.*

vysvetlivka

he'd better = he had better
mal by radšej – odporúčanie
 he'd rather = he would rather
radšej by – želanie



e) po slovesách **need, help, dare** môže nasledovať infinitív s to i bez to

We helped him **do** it. = We helped him **to do** it.

Cvičenie 16.1. *Doplňte do viet, ak treba, let, make, 'd better, 'd rather a slovesá v správnom tvare.*

- The weather is terrible. It me depressed. FEEL
- My parents weren't strict with me. They me whatever I wanted. DO
- The book was really moving. It me CRY
- Why do you always other people your job? DO
- He was his suitcase at the customs. OPEN
- I advise you to stay here overnight. Believe me, you now. NOT LEAVE
- When did you arrive home last night? I you NOT HEAR, COME
- He never her to other men. TALK
- I you where I found it. NOT TELL
- Suzy was French even though she is a beginner. SPEAK

VÄZBA 1. PÁDU S INFINITÍVOM

a) po slovesách v činnom rode

to seem	zdať sa
to appear	zdať sa, javiť sa
to prove	ukázať sa
to happen	náhodou

She **seems to be** busy. *Zdá sa, že je zaneprázdnená.*

She **seems to have been** busy.

Zdá sa, že bola zaneprázdnená (predtým).

She **seemed to be** busy. *Zdalo sa, že je zaneprázdnená*

She **seemed to have been** busy.

Zdalo sa, že bola zaneprázdnená (predtým).

They **happened to know** it. *Náhodou to vedeli.*

Do you **happen to know** where it is?

Nevieš náhodou, kde to je?

vysvetlivka

She seems **to be** sick.

Zdá sa, že je jej zle. (dnes, dnes)

She seems **to have been** sick.

Zdá sa, že jej bolo zle. (dnes, včera)

She seemed **to be** sick.

Zdalo sa, že jej je zle. (včera, včera)

She seemed **to have been** sick.

Zdalo sa, že jej bolo zle. (včera, predvčerom)



Cvičenie 16.2. *Napište vety tak, aby mali rovnaký význam.*

- It seems that she is leaving.
She
- It seems that the company had a pre tax profit of 10 million pounds.
The company
- It seems that Ben lost his wallet on the bus.
Ben
- It seemed that they hadn't heard it before.
.....
- It seems that Suzy has a lot of friends.
Suzy

b) po slovesách v trpnom rode

to say	hovoriť
to suppose	predpokladať
to expect	očakávať
to think	myslieť
to believe	veriť
to announce	oznámiť
to know	vedieť
to allege	tvrdiť

It is said (that) he is sick. = He **is said to be** sick.

Hovorí sa, že je chorý.

It is said (that) he was sick. = He **is said to have been** sick.

Hovorí sa, že bol chorý.

It was said (that) he was sick. = He **was said to be** sick.


Hovorilo sa, že je chorý.

Infinitív

It was said (that) he had been sick. = He **was said to have been sick**. *Hovorilo sa, že bol chorý.*

zapamätaj si
⌵ ⌶ ⌷

It is said that she is 98 years old. =
= She is said to be 99 years old.
Hovorí sa, že má 99 rokov.



Cvičenie 16.3. Napište vety tak, aby mali rovnaký význam.

- 1) It is known that he is a good singer.
He is.
- 2) It is expected they will do it tomorrow.
They are.
- 3) People believe she didn't do it.
She is.
- 4) It was announced that there had been four people
killed in the storm.
Four people.
- 5) It is supposed that his latest book is very good.
His latest book.

c) ďalšie infinitívne väzby

to be likely	<i>pravdepodobne áno</i>
to be unlikely	<i>pravdepodobne nie</i>
to be sure	<i>určite</i>
to be easy	<i>ľahko</i>
to be difficult	<i>ťažko</i>
to be impossible	<i>nemožné</i>
to be happy	<i>byť šťastný, rád</i>
to be lucky	<i>mať šťastie</i>
to be glad	<i>byť rád</i>
to be pleased	<i>byť potešený</i>
to be safe	<i>byť bezpečný</i>

Your handwriting is **difficult to read**.

Je ťažké čítať tvoj rukopis.

It is almost **impossible to read**. *Je skoro nemožné to prečítať.*

She is **unlikely to go** there. *Pravdepodobne tam nepôjde.*

He is **difficult to talk to**. *Je ťažké s ním hovoriť.*


pikantnosť
⌵ ⌶ ⌷

(I am) pleased to meet you.
Som rád, že vás poznávam.



vysvetlivka
⌵ ⌶ ⌷

He is **happy to be** there. *Je rád, že je tam.*
He is **lucky to be** there. *Má šťastie, že je tam.*



Cvičenie 16.4. Napište vety tak, aby mali rovnaký význam.

- 1) It is easy to be with her.
She is easy.
- 2) They will probably come tomorrow.
They are.
- 3) It was believed that he had done it.
He was.
- 4) It is difficult to live with them.
They are.
- 5) People say that James is staying with Ruth.
James is.
- 6) It is known that they had problems with money last
year.
They are.
- 7) People think it happened many years ago.
It is.
- 8) I don't think she will come.
She is.
- 9) It seems that he is leaving.
He.

-
- 10) You can drink the water.
The water is
- 11) It seemed that they had had a perfect holiday.
They
- 12) I am sure Jane will pass the exam.
Jane is
- 13) It is impossible to talk to him now.
He is
- 14) It seems the company lost a lot of money last year.
The company
- 15) It is reported that three people have been killed in the accident.
Three people are

VÄZBA PREDMETOVÉHO PÁDU S INFINITÍVOM

po slovesách

to want	<i>chcieť</i>
to tell	<i>povedať</i>
to ask	<i>požiadať</i>
to invite	<i>pozvať</i>
to order	<i>prikázať</i>
to expect	<i>očakávať</i>
to would like	<i>chcieť</i>
to believe	<i>veriť</i>
to consider	<i>považovať</i>
to suppose	<i>predpokladať</i>

I asked him to excuse me.

Požiadaval som ho, aby ma ospravedlnil.

I would like them to go there. *Chcel by som, aby tam išli.*

Tell him not to do it again. *Povedz mu, aby to už to nerobil.*

Väzba predmetového pádu s infinitívom sa môže spájať aj s trpným rodom:

Do you **expect** the book **to be sent** by mail?

Očakávajú, že tú knihu pošlú poštou?

Cvičenie 16.5. Preložte nasledujúce vety do angličtiny.

Použite väzbu predmetového pádu s infinitívom.

- 1) Chceme, aby ste tomu rozumeli.
.....
- 2) Požiadali ju, aby ich ospravedlnila.
.....
- 3) Prečo mi hovoríte, aby som to nerobil?
.....
- 4) Očakávajú, že sa do soboty vráti?
.....
- 5) Prikázali nám, aby sme neopúšťali izbu.
.....
- 6) Nechceme, aby to vedeli.
.....
- 7) Neočakávali sme, že to bude tak ďaleko.
.....
- 8) Chceli by ste, aby sme tu zostali s vami?
.....
- 9) Pozvali nás, aby sme sa k nim pridali.
.....
- 10) Skutočne chceme, aby si to urobil?
.....

17. Trpný rod

PODMET + **BE** + PRÍČASTIE MINULÉ

I **am asked**.

It **has been said**.

vysvetlivka

Príčastie minulé sa pri pravidelných slovách tvorí príponou -ed. Pri nepravidelných slovesách ho nájdeme v treťom stĺpčeku.



odkaz

Preštudujte si Nepravidelné slovesá na strane 135.



a) prítomný čas

Činný rod	Trpný rod
They invite me.	I am invited <i>Som pozývaný. (opakovane)</i>
They are inviting me.	I am being invited <i>Som pozvaný. (práve teraz)</i>

b) minulé čas

Činný rod	Trpný rod
They invited me.	I was invited <i>Bol som pozvaný.</i>
They were inviting me.	I was being invited <i>Bol som (práve) pozvaný.</i>

zapamätaj si

The house **is decorated** every year.
Dom sa maľuje každý rok.
The house **is being decorated**.
Dom sa práve maľuje.



zaujímavosť

Shakespeare **was born** in 1564.
Shakespeare sa narodil v roku 1564.



c) predprítomný čas

Činný rod	Trpný rod
They have invited me.	I have been invited . <i>Bol som pozvaný.</i>

d) predminulý čas

Činný rod	Trpný rod
They had invited me.	I had been invited . <i>Bol som pozvaný.</i>

e) budúci čas

Činný rod	Trpný rod
They will invite me.	I will be invited . <i>Budem pozvaný.</i>

f) predbudúci čas

Činný rod	Trpný rod
They will have invited me.	I will have been invited . <i>Budem pozvaný.</i>

g) prítomný kondicionál

Činný rod	Trpný rod
They would invite me.	I would be invited . <i>Bol by som pozvaný.</i>

h) minulé kondicionál

Činný rod	Trpný rod
They would have invited me.	I would have been invited . <i>Bol by som býval pozvaný.</i>

i) trpný rod po modálnych slovesách

Činný rod	Trpný rod
You must do it by tomorrow.	It must be done by tomorrow. <i>Musí sa to urobiť do zajtra.</i>

pikantnosť

English is spoken here.
Tu sa hovorí po anglicky.
 Dogs must be kept on a leash.
Psy musia byť na vôdzke.
 Sold. *Predané.*

Trpný rod sa tvorí aj od sloví, ktoré majú predložkový predmet.

Činný rod	Trpný rod
A car ran over a dog. <i>Auto prešlo psa.</i>	A dog was run over (by a car). <i>Pes bol prejdený autom.</i>

Cvičenie 17.1. *Utvorte vety v trpnom rode.*

- 1) You can see it everywhere.
 It
- 2) We decorated our house last month.

- 3) They will never discuss this matter.

- 4) We took these photos in Greece.

- 5) They won't have finished this work by Monday.

- 6) Have they left the house unlocked?

- 7) They are discussing a very important problem at the moment.

- 8) We speak English here.

- 9) We will never forget him.

- 10) They have shot the Prime Minister.

Cvičenie 17.2. *Utvorte vety v trpnom rode.*

- 1) Mrs Black looks after our house when we are abroad.
 Our house
- 2) They haven't spoken about that accident yet.

- 3) They sent for Mr Smith.

- 4) They will deal with this matter soon.

- 5) I don't like people shouting at me.

Väzba TO HAVE SOMETHING DONE

a) dať si niečo urobiť

I **have had** my hair **cut**. *Dal som si ostrihať vlasy.*

– **ale** –

I have cut my hair. *Ostrihal som si vlasy.*

b) prihodiť sa niečo nemilé

They **had** their luggage **stolen**. *Ukradli im batožinu.*

Cvičenie 17.3. *Utvorte vety s použitím väzby to have something done.*

- 1) I never clean my flat myself.
 I always
- 2) They stole Joyce the wallet yesterday.
 Joyce
- 3) They have just repaired the heating.
 We

Trpný rod

- 4) They are servicing my car at the moment.
I
- 5) She always cuts her hair herself.
She never

TRPNÝ ROD PRI SLOVESÁCH S DVOMA PREDMETMI

Niektoré slovesá majú dva predmety.

Trpný rod sa môže tvoriť dvoma spôsobmi.

Činný rod	Trpný rod
Jim gave Claire the book	The book was given to Claire
	Claire was given the book.

Rovnakým spôsobom sa tvorí trpný rod pri nasledujúcich slovesách:

to pay	platiť
to offer	ponúknuť
to ask	pýtať sa, žiadať
to show	ukázať
to teach	učiť
to tell	povedať
to send	poslať

Cvičenie 17.4. Utvorte vety v trpnom rode.

- 1) They sent him an important letter.
He
- 2) They have shown her how to do it.
She
- 3) They will tell you about it soon.
You
- 4) They asked me to wait.
I
- 5) They pay the employees weekly.
The employees
- 6) They offered Sam the job.
Sam
- 7) They teach the children to count.
The children

- 8) They haven't told us yet.
We
- 9) Lucy asked the police for help.
The police
- 10) How much will they pay you?
How much will you

Test 7

- 1) I suggest it right now.
A) to do B) do C) did D) doing
- 2) You came late last night, didn't you? I didn't hear you
A) to come B) come C) coming D) came
- 3) Pat was made there with them.
A) to go B) go C) going D) went
- 4) He is said it last week.
A) to do B) do
C) to have done D) have done
- 5) Why are you staying with your son? We our flat
A) have, rebuild B) have, rebuilt
C) are having, rebuild D) are having, rebuilt
- 6) The police told us it the day before.
A) has been stolen B) was stolen
C) is stolen D) had been stolen
- 7) They seem in a while.
A) to leave B) to have left
C) to be leaving D) leave
- 8) Our teacher never questions.
A) lets us ask B) let us to ask
C) lets us to ask D) let us asking
- 9) Lionel the job yesterday.
A) was offered B) is offered
C) is offering D) has been offered

- 10) Last year was successful. Our firm seems a profit.
A) to be making B) to make
C) made D) to have made
- 11) Did you have difficulty our house?
A) finding B) with finding
C) find D) to find
- 12) My husband never repairs our car. He always
A) has repaired it B) has it repaired
C) has it repair D) is having it repair
- 13) The burglar admitted the same house before.
A) to have broken into B) to break into
C) having broken into D) breaking into
- 14) He stopped five years ago. That is why he can't
stand other people
A) smoking, smoking B) to smoke, to smoke
C) smoking, to smoke D) to smoke, smoking
- 15) Believe me, I about it.
A) told B) telling
C) wasn't told D) having told
- 16) Who America discovered?
A) is, by B) was, by
C) has been, by D) was discovered, with
- 17) It at the meeting next Wednesday.
A) will be announced B) will be announcing
C) will announce D) will be announce
- 18) You risk a car. Use the zebra crossing!
A) knocking over by B) being knock over
C) having been knocked D) being knocked over
- 19) Where is Sarah? She her hair
A) has, do B) has, done
C) is having, do D) is having, done
- 20) Stop me it again and again.
A) making, say B) to make, say
C) making, to say D) to make, to say

18. Rozkazovací spôsob

2. OSOBA JEDNOTNÉHO AJ MNOŽNÉHO ČÍSLA

= infinitív bez to

Say it! *Povedz to! Povedzte to!*

Help her! *Pomôž jej! Pomôžte jej!*

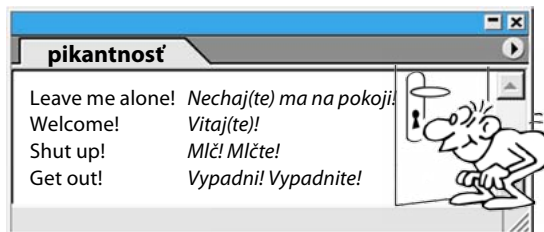
Na zdôraznenie môžeme použiť pomocné sloveso do.

Do give me a ring! *Zavolaj mi!*

Zápor

Don't go there! *Nechod tam! Nechod'te tam!*

Don't shout! *Nekrič! Nekričte!*



1. OSOBA MNOŽNÉHO ČÍSLA

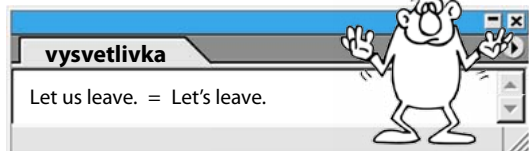
LET'S + INFINITÍV BEZ TO

Let's go! *Podme!*

Let's take it! *Vezmime si to!*

Zápor

Let's not stay here! *Nezostávajme tu!*



OSTATNÉ OSOBY

LET + PODSTATNÉ MENO + INFINITÍV BEZ TO ALEBO ZÁMENO

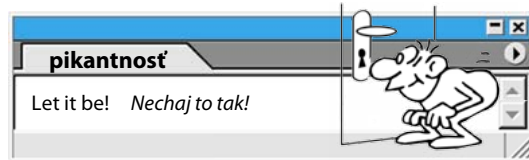
Let Jim do it! *Nech to urobí Jim!*

Let me say a few words! *Dovoľte mi povedať pár slov!*

Zápor

Don't let him take it.

Nech si to neberie.



Cvičenie 18.1. *Utvorte záporné vety v rozkazovacom spôsobe. Použite slovesá z rámčeka.*

take	close	leave	touch	worry
shout	open	speak	stand up	say

1) Keep the window open.

.....

2) Let's wait.

.....

3) Shh, whisper.

.....

4) You needn't worry.

.....

5) It's cold outside. the window.

6) Sit down.

.....

7) He mustn't say things like that.

.....

8) The children shouldn't talk to strangers.

.....

9) The paint is still wet.

..... it.

10) He shouldn't take advantage of you like that.

.....

19. Do, make

DO

homework	<i>robiť domácu úlohu</i>
an exam	<i>robiť skúšku</i>
exercises	<i>cvičiť</i>
the ironing	<i>žehliť</i>
the washing	<i>prať</i>
the washing up	<i>umývať riad</i>
the shopping	<i>nakupovať</i>
somebody a favour	<i>urobiť niekomu laskavosť</i>
housework	<i>robiť domáce práce</i>
one's best	<i>usilovať sa</i>
well	<i>dať sa dobre</i>
That will do.	<i>To stačí.</i>
Well done.	<i>Výborne.</i>

MAKE

a choice	<i>vybrať si</i>
a decision	<i>rozhodnúť sa</i>
a will	<i>napísať závet</i>
a noise	<i>robiť hluk</i>
a mistake	<i>urobiť chybu</i>
a bed	<i>ustlať posteľ</i>
a phone call	<i>zatelefonovať</i>
up one's mind	<i>rozhodnúť sa</i>
a mess	<i>urobiť neporiadok</i>
sure	<i>uistiť sa</i>
money	<i>zarábať peniaze</i>
a speech	<i>predniesť prejav</i>
a profit	<i>mať zisk</i>
a loss	<i>utrpieť stratu</i>
love	<i>milovať sa</i>
progress	<i>robiť pokroky</i>
trouble	<i>robiť problémy</i>
up a story	<i>vymyslieť si príbeh</i>
a fuss	<i>robiť zbytočne veľa kriku</i>
friends	<i>spriatelieť sa</i>
an offer	<i>urobiť ponuku</i>
a suggestion	<i>navrhnuť</i>
a difference	<i>mať vplyv</i>
fun	<i>robiť si žarty</i>
sense	<i>dávať zmysel</i>

Cvičenie 19.1. Doplňte do viet **do** alebo **make** v správnom tvare.

- My grandfather died without a will.
- You aren't any progress at all.
- Mr White has a lot of money.
- Careful, you've a mistake.
- Could you me a favour?
- It doesn't any difference.
- She is friendly, so it's easy for her friends.
- love, not war.
- Stop fun of me.
- Excuse me, I have to a phone call.
- I promise, I'll my best.
- We must a decision by Tuesday.
- Why are you always trouble?
- The President a short speech yesterday.
- That will I have had enough.
- Have you already your homework?
- Go and sure the window is closed, please.
- The children such a mess in their room.
- If you want to keep fit, you should exercises regularly.
- Well , Peter. It was really good.
- Shall I help you the washing up?
- She hasn't up her mind yet.
- My mum a real fuss of my children.
- I don't understand it. It simply doesn't any sense to me.
- Don't a noise. I'm working.

20. Príslovky

TVORENIE

a) Príslovky tvorené pomocou prípony -ly

PRÍDAVNÉ MENO + -LY

strict strictly
prísny prísne

Pravopis

-y sa po spoluhláske mení na -i

easy easily
ľahký ľahko

-le vynecháva sa -e a -l splýva

horrible horribly
hrozný hrozne

-ic prípona -ally

tragic tragically
tragický tragicky

-ll pridáva sa iba -y

full fully
plný plno

-ue vynecháva sa -u

true truly
pravdivý pravdivo

Výnimky:

public publicly whole wholly
verejný verejne úplný úplne

zapamätaj si

careful carefully



b) Príslovka má rovnaký tvar ako prídavné meno

early skorý, skoro
daily denný, denne

weekly týždenný, týždenne
monthly mesačný, mesačne
fast rýchly, rýchlo
likely pravdepodobný, pravdepodobne
straight priamy, priamo
long dlhý, dlho



vysvetlivka

See you **soon**. Uvidíme sa **skoro (o chvíľu)**.
I get up **early**. Vstávam **skoro (zavčasu)**.

Cvičenie 20.1. Utvorte príslovky.

- 1) happy
- 2) cheerful
- 3) quiet
- 4) incredible
- 5) financial
- 6) logical
- 7) lazy
- 8) straight
- 9) whole
- 10) true
- 11) public
- 12) usual
- 13) fast
- 14) simple
- 15) heavy

c) Prípona -ly dáva príslovke iný význam

deep hlboký, hlboko deeply veľmi
hard tvrdý, tvrdo hardly sotva
high vysoký, vysoko highly veľmi, nadmieru
near blízky, blízko nearly takmer
late neskorý, neskoro lately nedávno

Cvičenie 20.2. Vyberte správnu možnosť.

- 1) I could HARD/HARDLY read it. It was NEAR/NEARLY illegible.
- 2) Jim can jump HIGH/HIGHLY.

- 3) Have you met her LATE/LATELY?
- 4) We were DEEP/DEEPLY affected by her unexpected death.
- 5) Phil will have to work HARD/HARDLY to pass the exam.
- 6) Mrs Jones is a HIGH/HIGHLY respected lawyer.
- 7) It's NEAR/NEARLY the same.
- 8) He lives NEAR/NEARLY the bus station.
- 9) They HARD/HARDLY know each other.
- 10) His English is GOOD/WELL. Yes, he speaks English GOOD/WELL.

d) Príslovky tvorené príponami -wards, -wise, -ways

afterwards	<i>potom</i>
backwards	<i>dozadu, späť</i>
westward(s)	<i>smerom na západ</i>
forward	<i>dopredu</i>
clockwise	<i>v smere hodinových ručičiek</i>
counter-clockwise	<i>proti smeru hodinových ručičiek</i>
otherwise	<i>ináč</i>
sideway	<i>bokom</i>

e) Opisný spôsob


friendly	<i>priateľský</i>	in a friendly way	<i>priateľsky</i>
difficult	<i>problematický</i>	with difficulty	<i>problematicky</i>

f) Ostatné príslovky

here	<i>tu</i>	actually	<i>vlastne</i>
there	<i>tam</i>	almost	<i>takmer</i>
inside	<i>vnútri</i>	perhaps	<i>azda, možno</i>
outside	<i>vonku</i>	enough	<i>dost'</i>
already	<i>už</i>	even	<i>dokonca</i>
always	<i>vždy</i>	just	<i>práve</i>
often	<i>často</i>	rather	<i>dost'</i>
sometimes	<i>niekedy, občas</i>		<i>(negatívne)</i>
seldom	<i>zriedka</i>	fairly	<i>dost'</i>
rarely	<i>málokedy</i>		<i>(pozitívne)</i>
never	<i>nikdy</i>	pretty	<i>celkom, dost'</i>
still	<i>ešte stále</i>	quite	<i>celkom</i>
soon	<i>čoskoro</i>	absolutely	<i>úplne</i>
occasionally	<i>príležitostne</i>	completely	<i>úplne, celkom</i>
eventually	<i>nakoniec,</i>	so	<i>tak</i>
	<i>napokon</i>	by all means	<i>zaiste</i>
finally	<i>nakoniec,</i>	by no means	<i>vôbec nie</i>
	<i>konečne</i>		

pikantnosť

quite ≠ quiet
 It's **quite** good. *Je to celkom dobré.*
 Be **quiet!** *Bud(te) ticho!*



zaujímavosť

He is **so** clever.
 He is **such** a clever boy.



ENOUGH

PRÍDAVNÉ MENO + ENOUGH

He is **old enough** to drive a car.
Je dosť starý na to, aby šoféroval auto.

ENOUGH + PODSTATNÉ MENO

We don't have **enough money**. *Nemáme dosť peňazí.*

Cvičenie 20.3. Doplňte do viet **enough** + výrazy zo zátvorky.

- 1) We don't have for everybody.
 We'll have to use cups instead. (GLASSES)
- 2) You are to understand how serious it is. (OLD)
- 3) We aren't to buy a new car every year. (RICH)
- 4) I don't think you are to get the job. (EXPERIENCED)
- 5) Julia is to win the race. (FAST)
- 6) We don't have to make a cake. (EGGS)
- 7) The house is not for three families. (BIG)
- 8) There should be for all the students. (DICTIONARIES)
- 9) He is to lift it. (STRONG)
- 10) There isn't for all of us. (ROOM)

Príslovky

STUPŇOVANIE PRÍSLOVIEK

a) príponami -er, -est

- jednoslabičné a early

fast	faster	fastest
<i>rýchlo</i>	<i>rýchlejšie</i>	<i>najrýchlejšie</i>

b) opisne pomocou more, most

- príslovky zakončené na -ly

easily	more easily	most easily
<i>ľahko</i>	<i>ľahšie</i>	<i>najľahšie</i>

- viacslabičné


often	more often	most often
<i>často</i>	<i>častejšie</i>	<i>najčastejšie</i>

c) nepravidelné stupňovanie

pozri stupňovanie prídavných mien

odkaz

Preštudujte si nepravidelné stupňovanie prísloviek v kapitole 2. Prídavné mená na strane 17.



Cvičenie 20.4. Vystupňujte nasledujúce príslovky.

- 1) fast.....
- 2) slowly.....
- 3) far.....
- 4) early.....
- 5) quickly.....
- 6) late.....
- 7) often.....
- 8) badly.....
- 9) successfully.....
- 10) little.....

21. Predložky

a) JEDNODUCHÉ

about	<i>o, okolo, asi</i>
above	<i>nad</i>
across	<i>krížom, cez, naprieč</i>
after	<i>po</i>
against	<i>proti</i>
ago	<i>pred (čas)</i>
along	<i>pozdĺž</i>
among	<i>medzi (viac ako dvoma)</i>
around	<i>okolo</i>
at	<i>pri, v, na (miesto)</i> <i>v, o, na (čas)</i>
before	<i>pred (čas, výnimočne miesto)</i>
behind	<i>za (miesto)</i>
below	<i>pod</i>
beside	<i>vedľa (miesto)</i>
besides	<i>okrem, mimo</i>
between	<i>medzi (dvoma)</i>
beyond	<i>za, mimo</i>
but	<i>okrem, mimo</i>
by	<i>7. pád</i> <i>pri, vedľa, blízko (miesto)</i> <i>do (čas)</i>
despite	<i>napriek</i>
down	<i>dolu</i>
during	<i>počas, cez</i>
except	<i>okrem</i>
for	<i>pre</i> <i>do</i> <i>na (čas)</i>
from	<i>od, z</i>
in	<i>v, na (miesto)</i> <i>v, za (čas)</i>
inside	<i>vnútri</i>
into	<i>do (vnútra)</i>
like	<i>ako</i>
near	<i>blízko</i>
of	<i>2. pád</i> <i>z, o</i>
off	<i>z (povrchu)</i>
on	<i>na</i>
opposite	<i>naproti</i>

outside	<i>vonku, mimo</i>
over	<i>nad, cez, po</i>
past	<i>okolo, po (čas)</i>
round	<i>dookola, okolo</i>
since	<i>od (do prítomnosti)</i>
through	<i>7. pád, cez</i>
throughout	<i>po celý (čas), po celom (priestor)</i>
till, until	<i>až do (čas)</i>
to	<i>k, do</i>
towards	<i>smerom k, voči osobe</i>
under	<i>pod</i>
unlike	<i>na rozdiel od</i>
up	<i>hore, nahor</i>
with	<i>s, so</i>
within	<i>vnútri, v rozsahu</i>
without	<i>bez</i>

Cvičenie 21.1. Doplňte do viet predložky z rámčeka.

into	across	off	within	towards
between	by	since	except	during

- All our students live 10 kilometres.
- The gallery is opened daily Sunday.
- He was walking his wife.
- It happened World War II.
- There is a post office the pub and the theatre.
- He wasn't careful and fell the ladder.
- This book was written a famous pop singer.
- There is a new bridge the river.
- We have been here September.
- Her latest novel has been translated three languages.

b) ZLOŽENÉ

along with	<i>spolu s</i>	out of	<i>z</i>
as to	<i>čo sa týka</i>	up to	<i>až do, až k</i>
as for	<i>čo sa týka</i>	next to	<i>vedľa</i>

Predložky

c) VIACSLOVNÉ

according to	podľa
apart from	nehľadiac na
because of	kvôli, pre
by means of	pomocou
in accordance with	v zhode s
in case of	pre prípad
in favour of	v prospech
in front of	pred (miesto)
in spite of	napriek
instead of	namiesto
in view of	vzhľadom na
on behalf of	v prospech
owing to	vďaka
regardless to	bez ohľadu na
thanks to	vďaka


DÔLEŽITÉ PREDLOŽKOVÉ VÄZBY

AT	
look at	pozeráť sa na
aim at	mieriť na
laugh at	smiať sa
smile at	usmievať sa
shoot at	strielať na
point at	ukázať na
arrive at	prísť na (stanicu, letisko)

IN	
trust in	veriť v
believe in	veriť v
succeed in	mať úspech
deal in	obchodovať s
arrive in	prísť (do mesta, štátu)
take part in	zúčastniť sa


vysvetlivka

arrive **in** Paris pricestovať do Paríža
 arrive **at** the airport prísť na letisko



zapamätaj si

in the world	na svete
in the tree	na strome
in the picture	na obrázku
in the photo	na fotke
in the sky	na oblohe
in the sun	na slnku



TO	
object to	namietat' proti
listen to	počúvať
belong to	patriť
compare to	porovnávať s

FOR	
wait for	čakať na
leave for	odišť (kam)
apply for	žiadať
ask for	žiadať
apologise for	ospravedlniť sa za

OF	
boast of	chváliť sa
accuse of	obviňovať z
take care of	starat' sa o
remind of	pripomínať niečo
consist of	skladať sa z
approve of	schváliť čo
dream of	snívať o

FROM	
protect from	chrániť pred
prevent from	zabrániť v
differ from	líšiť sa od
come from	pochádzať z
suffer from	trpieť čím

ABOUT	
complain about	sťažovať sa na
worry about	trápiť sa niečím
care about	dbať na, o

Cvičenie 21.2. Vyberte správnu predložku.

- 1) The robber climbed OVER/ACROSS the wall.
- 2) It differs OF/FROM what you told last week.
- 3) This sweater reminds me OFF/OF my brother.
- 4) Stop laughing AT/TO him.
- 5) According FROM/TO his wife he is not that clever.
- 6) Eight FROM/OUT OF ten people in Britain can speak only English.
- 7) My father doesn't approve ON/OF smoking at all.
- 8) When did you arrive AT/IN Cardiff?
- 9) I am writing to you ON BEHALF OF/OWING TO all the tenants of this house.
- 10) Paul left TO/FOR Egypt yesterday.

ťahák

PREDLOŽKY ČASU

AT

at 5	o piatej
at Christmas/Easter	na Vianoce/Veľkú noc
at the weekend	cez víkend
at the moment	teraz
at present	v súčasnosti
at dawn	za úsvitu
at noon	na poludnie
at night	v noci
at midnight	o polnoci
at the age of 5	v piatich rokoch
at the same time	súčasne

ON

on Friday	v piatok
on Friday morning/	v piatok ráno/
afternoon/evening	popoludní/večer
on April 10	10. apríla

IN

in April	v apríli
in 1996	v roku 1996
in the morning/	ráno/
afternoon/evening	popoludní/večer
in summer	v lete
in the 16th century	v 16. storočí
in an hour	o hodinu
in a while	o chvíľu

ťahák

PREDLOŽKY MIESTA

AT

at home	doma
at the cinema/	v kine/divadle/
theatre/concert	na koncerte
at the party	na večierku
at the station/airport	na stanici/letisku
at the bus stop	na autobusovej zastávke
at the traffic lights	na semafore
at the crossroads	na križovatke
at the bottom of	na dne, dole
at the top of	na vrchu, hore
at the end of	na konci
at sea	na mori
at the seaside	pri mori
at school/university	v škole/na univerzite
at 10 Downing Street	na Downing Street číslo 10
at the doctor's	u lekára
at the grocer's	v potravinách
at Peter's	u Petra (doma)
at the table	pri stole
at the corner	na rohu

IN

in bed	v posteli
in Downing Street	na Downing Street
in the country	na dedine
in London	v Londýne
in Russia	v Rusku
in an office	v kancelárii
in the south	na juhu
in the garden	v záhrade
in the corner	na rohu

ON

on the table	na stole
on the first floor	na prvom poschodí
on the right	vpravo
on foot	peši

Predložky

Cvičenie 21.3. Doplňte do viet predložky.

- 1) See you Wednesday evening then.
- 2) I was born 1980.
- 3) What are you doing the weekend?
- 4) I can't be at home and at work same time.
- 5) They were in the mountains Christmas.
- 6) I'll be there five minutes.
- 7) She is not working the moment.
- 8) They got married May.
- 9) The film starts 7 pm.
- 10) It often rains autumn.

Cvičenie 21.4. Doplňte do viet predložky.

- 1) Luka lives the second floor.
- 2) The Prime Minister lives 10 Downing Street.
- 3) Mrs Pink has a big house Elm Street.
- 4) It was written the bottom of the page.
- 5) Portsmouth is the south of England.
- 6) Jane is sitting the desk writing letters.
- 7) There is a plant the corner of the room.
- 8) Where is Lucy? the dentist.
- 9) Did they go there by car? No foot.
- 10) Let's meet John's an hour.

Test 8

- 1) Could you me a favour?
A) make B) do C) take D) did
- 2) Do it, please.
A) quicklier B) quicker
C) more quicker D) more quickly
- 3) When shall we meet? Thursday morning.
A) On B) At C) – D) In
- 4) It was raining
A) heavy B) heavily C) heavilyly D) heavilly
- 5) The company apologised for what had happened.
A) publically B) publicaly C) publicly D) publical
- 6) Where is it? It's the corner of the kitchen.
A) at B) on C) in D) to
- 7) He is qualified, he will get the job.
A) highly B) high C) higher D) height
- 8) Why is she always trouble?
A) doing B) taking C) making D) having

- 9) They always treat other people
A) friendly B) friendlily
C) with friendship D) in a friendly way
- 10) He'll be here a moment.
A) in B) at C) for D) since
- 11) Was the film good? Yes, good, but long.
A) quiet, quiet B) quite, rather
C) quite, quite D) rather, rather
- 12) He put the cat the pigeons.
A) between B) in C) across D) among
- 13) They don't have to buy it, they have to rent it.
A) enough money B) money enough
C) not enough money D) not money enough
- 14) Has Bob his homework yet?
A) made B) done C) make D) do
- 15) Why is he a fuss of them?
A) doing B) do C) making D) make
- 16) Sharon lives 2 Palm Road.
A) on B) in C) at D) to
- 17) Jim is waiting the corner of the street.
A) in B) into C) at D) within
- 18) I could see it.
A) harder B) hardly C) hardlier D) hard
- 19) It didn't any sense.
A) do B) doing C) make D) making
- 20) Who is that man the picture?
A) on B) at C) to D) in

22. Slovosled

PRIAMY SLOVOSLED

- v oznamovacej vete

1	2	3	4
PODMET	PRÍSUDOK	PREDMET	PRÍSLOVKOVÉ URČENIE
I	saw	him	at school.

PRÍSLOVKOVÉ URČENIE

1	2	3
SPÔSOBU	MIESTA	ČASU

She said it deliberately at the party yesterday.

Povedala to včera na večierku úmyselne.

zapamätaj si

1. podmet They
2. prísudok spoke
3. predmet French
4. príslovkové určenie spôsobu fluently
5. príslovkové určenie miesta at the meeting
6. príslovkové určenie času yesterday.



Príslovkové určenie času môže byť na začiatku vety.

Yesterday I was at my cottage. *Včera som bol na chate.*

Ak je vo vete **viacero príslovkových určení času**, ako

prvé sa uvádza **to presnejšie**.

See you at four on Wednesday.

Uvidíme sa v stredu o štvrtj.

vysvetlivka

We met him **at 6 yesterday**.
Stretli sme ho včera o šiestej.



Podmet musí byť v každej vete.

It is raining. *Prší.*

Cvičenie 22.1. Dajte slová do správneho poradia a utvorte vety.

1) THE FILM/SAW/WE/LAST NIGHT/AT THE CINEMA.

.....

2) ABOUT IT/AT SCHOOL/THEY/A WEEK AGO/SPOKE.

.....

3) TOMORROW/LET'S/AT 5/MET.

.....

4) QUIETLY/CLOSED/HE/THE DOOR.

.....

5) AT THE STAFF MEETING/MONDAY/NEXT/WILL BE ANNOUNCED/IT.

.....

6) AFTER BREAKFAST/OUR FRIENDS/CALLED/IMMEDIATELY/WE.

.....

7) AT SCHOOL/TODAY/YOU/HIM/HAVE/MET.

.....

8) EVERY DAY/BY CAR/JACK/TO WORK/GOES.

.....

9) IN THE EVENING/TO THE SUPERMARKET/LET'S/SHOPPING/GO.

.....

10) FLUENTLY/THINK/ENGLISH/ALL STUDENTS/I / WILL/SPEAK.

.....

Slovosled

DVA PREDMETY

Priamy predmet (4. pád) nasleduje za bezpredložkovým nepriamym predmetom (3. pád).

3. pád 4. pád

She gave **John** **a book.** *Dala Jánovi knihu.*
 She gave **him** **a book.** *Dala mu knihu.*

Predložkový nepriamy (3. pád) predmet nasleduje za priamym (4. pád) predmetom


a) ak je priamym predmetom osobné zámeno
 Give **it to me.** *Daj mi to.*

b) ak je nepriamym predmetom dlhšie spojenie
 I brought **the book to my sister-in-law.**
Priniesol som švagrinej knihu.

c) ak je na nepriamom predmete dôraz
 I gave **the flowers to you,** not to your sister.
Dal som kvety tebe, nie tvojej sestre.

zaujímavosť

He brought Claire a rose.
 He brought her a rose.
 He brought it to her.
 He brought a rose to Claire, not to Julia.



Cvičenie 22.2. Vyberte správnu možnosť.

- 1) A) She sent a letter him. B) She sent him a letter.
- 2) A) He lent me his phone. B) He lent his phone me.
- 3) A) Please, give me it. B) Please, give it to me.
- 4) A) Lucy showed me the picture. B) Lucy showed the picture me.
- 5) A) We want to buy for her a present. B) We want to buy her a present.
- 6) A) Pass the salt me, please. B) Pass me the salt, please.
- 7) A) Tom bought me it. B) Tom bought it for me.
- 8) A) Could you bring it to him? B) Could you bring him it?
- 9) A) They gave us their address. B) They gave their address us.
- 10) A) Phil sent them it. B) Phil sent it to them.

FREKVENČNÉ PRÍSLOVKY

never	nikdy
rarely	zriedkakedy
seldom	málokedy
sometimes	občas
often	často
usually	obyčajne
always	vždy
ever	niekedy (v otázke)


Frekvenčné príslovky stoja **pred plnovýznamovým slovesom**, ale **za slovesom to be**.

They **often go** out in the evening. *Často chodia večer von.*
 She **is always** busy. *Má vždy veľa práce.*

Do they **ever see** their parents? *Vidajú sa niekedy s rodičmi?*

ťahák

She **never smokes.**
 She **is never** late.



Cvičenie 22.3. Dajte príslovky na správne miesto vo vete.

- 1) You say you will love me. NEVER, ALWAYS
- 2) He can remember names. He must write them down. NEVER, ALWAYS
- 3) We don't go out after dinner. USUALLY
- 4) He will travel abroad. OFTEN
- 5) Do you go to bed before midnight? EVER
- 6) She is tired when she gets home. USUALLY
- 7) It rains in winter there. OFTEN

- 8) He has a shower. SELDOM
.....
.....
- 9) They will understand it. NEVER
.....
.....
- 10) Joe is drinking beer. ALWAYS
.....
.....

OBRÁTENÝ SLOVOSLED

Podmet stojí za prísudkom.

a) VÄZBA THERE IS, THERE ARE

THERE IS/THERE ARE + PODMET + PODMET +
+ PRÍSLOVKOVÉ URČENIE MIESTA

There is a pen on the desk. *Na stole je (nejaké) pero.*

There are (some) pens on the desk.

Na stole sú (nejaké) perá.

OTÁZKA

Is there a (any) pen on the desk? *Je na stole (nejaké) pero?*

Are there (any) pens on the desk?

Sú na stole (nejaké) perá?

ZÁPOR

There isn't a (any) pen on the desk.

Na stole nie je nijaké pero.

= **There is no** pen on the desk.

There aren't (any) pens on the desk.

Na stole nie sú nijaké perá.

= **There are no** pens on the desk.

Táto väzba existuje vo všetkých časoch.

There has been an accident on this road.

Na tejto ceste sa stala nehoda.

There will be a lot of people in the streets.

Na uliciach bude veľa ľudí.

Cvičenie 22.4. Doplňte do viet **there + is/are/was/were/has been/have been/will be.**

- any famous people at the launch ceremony last week?
- a 10:30 train to Oxford, but we missed it.
- time for sightseeing next Sunday?
- a lot of changes in my home town. Now it looks different.
- no-one at home last night.
- a lot of snow in the mountains since last Saturday.
- another way to do it? No, it is the only possibility.
- a lot of foreigners in Prague since 1989.
- anybody to meet you at the airport tomorrow?
- 60 minutes in an hour.

b) V OTÁZKE

Does he always do it? *Robí to vždy?*

c) PO VÝRAZOCH čiastočne alebo úplne záporných s cieľom zdôraznenia

not only *nielen*

no sooner... than *sotva*

Not only did he hear it, but he saw it.

Nielenže to videl, ale on to aj počul.

No sooner had he finished it than they asked him for further co-operation.

Sotva to dokončil, požiadali ho o ďalšiu spoluprácu.

d) VPODMIENKOVÝCHSÚVETIACH, AK JE VYNECHANÁ SPOJKA IF


Should you meet him, tell him I am waiting.

Keby si ho hádam stretol, povedz mu, že čakám.

Pozri kapitolu Podmienkové vety na strane 117.


poznámka

- There is a book on the table.
- Is there a book on the table?
- There isn't a book on the table.



odkaz

Preštudujte si kapitolu Podmienkové vety na strane 117.



Slovosled


e) PO VÝRAZOCH SO, NEITHER

so tiež áno

neither tiež nie

He is clever. **So am I.** *On je bystrý. Ja tiež.*She knows it. **So do I.** *Ona to vie. Ja tiež.*He isn't stupid. **Neither is she.** *On nie je hlúpy. Ona tiež nie.*They didn't work. **Neither did we.***Oni nepracovali. My tiež nie.*

ťahák	
I like it.	So do I.
I don't like it.	Neither do I.
She is French.	So is he.
She isn't French.	Neither is he.


Cvičenie 22.5. Doplňte do viet **so** alebo **neither** a vety dokončite.

- 1) Fred is still single. his sister.
- 2) You never talk to me. your husband.
- 3) They will be there. their parents.
- 4) Jane didn't know about it. I.
- 5) Val can't cook. Jack.
- 6) They haven't done it yet. we.
- 7) Peter got lost..... I.
- 8) I couldn't sleep last night. I.
- 9) They are busy. we.
- 10) Jim would like to go to the USA. I.


23. Otázka

a) POMOCOOU POMOCNÝCH SLOVIES

Does she work? *Pracuje?*
Where **did** they go? *Kam išli?*
pozri jednotlivé časy

odkaz

Preštudujte si kapitoly
Jednoduchý prítomný čas na strane 49 a Jednoduchý minulý čas na strane 54.




b) INVERZIOU (OBRÁTENÝM SLOVOSLEDOM)

Is he **sleeping**? *Spí?*
Are there any pears in the fridge?
Sú v chladničke nejaké hrušky?
Has she got a cat? *Má mačku?*

odkaz


Preštudujte si kapitoly:
Priebehový prítomný čas na strane 51
Priebehový minulý čas na strane 56
Predprítomný čas na strane 59
Predminulý čas na strane 65
Budúcnosť na strane 68



zaujímavosť

Why	<i>Prečo</i>	Whose	<i>Či</i>
What	<i>Čo, aký</i>	When	<i>Kedy</i>
Which	<i>Ktorý</i>	What time	<i>O koľkej</i>
Who	<i>Kto</i>	Where	<i>Kde, kam</i>

How	<i>Ako</i>
How often	<i>Ako často</i>
How much	<i>Koľko (nepočítateľné)</i>
How many	<i>Koľko (počítateľné)</i>
How far	<i>Ako ďaleko</i>
How long	<i>Ako dlho</i>
How many times	<i>Koľkokrát</i>



zapamätaj si

what aký
which ktorý
What colour do you like?
Aká farba sa ti páči?
Which colour do like? Blue or green?
Ktorá farba sa ti páči? Modrá alebo zelená?




OTÁZKA S PREDLOŽKOU

V otázke s predložkou je predložka obyčajne na konci otázky.
Who are they speaking **about**? *O kom hovoria?*
What is Jack afraid **of**? *Čoho sa Jack bojí?*
What is the weather **like**? *Aké je počasie?*
What does he look **like**? *Ako vyzerá?*

poznámka

What is he like? He is clever.
Aký je? Je bystrý.
What does he look like? He is tall.
Ako vyzerá? Je vysoký.



Cvičenie 23.1. Utvorte otázky.

- Paul is working today.?
- Peter can speak English.?
- They have gone.?
- Fiona had a birthday yesterday.?
- He will be there on time.?
- They were dancing at 6 yesterday.?
- This time tomorrow we will be lying on the beach.?

Otázka

- 8) He doesn't do it. ?
 9) They had finished it before they left. ?
 10) It seldom snows in England. ?

Cvičenie 23.2. *Pýtajte sa na podčiarknuté výrazy.*

- 1) I am flying **to LA** next week. ?
 2) We go to Italy **in summer**. ?
 3) Pam speaks **four** languages. ?
 4) They were cooking **dinner**. ?
 5) Tom loves Lucy **because she is pretty**. ?
 6) Suzy was wearing a **new dress**. ?
 7) He wore a suit **every day**. ?
 8) Jack wants to speak **to Claire**. ?
 9) I go to the cinema **twice a week**. ?
 10) They have **five** children. ?
 11) They got married **a month ago**. ?
 12) She is going to work **by car** today. ?
 13) He is **from Birmingham**. ?
 14) It's **Graham's** car. ?
 15) We were talking **about London**. ?
 16) Tim is looking **at the girl over there**. ?
 17) We have been waiting here **for two hours**. ?
 18) They changed **twice**. ?
 19) He needs **two kilos** of sugar. ?
 20) She is **twenty**. ?
 21) It was **sunny but windy**. ?
 22) They will go there **with their children**. ?
 23) It was announced **last week**. ?
 24) I always **walk** to work. ?
 25) It happened **at the cottage**. ?
 26) I prefer **the yellow car**. I don't like the red one. ?
 27) She was looking **for her glasses**. ?
 28) I like watching **horror films**. ?
 29) It took me **2 hours** to get to London. ?
 30) My sister is **tall and slim**. ?
 31) They will be able to stay there **for a week**. ?
 32) Pat smokes **twenty** cigarettes a day. ?
 33) There is a **big blue** lorry in front of the house. ?
 34) They did it **because they were asked**. ?
 35) Molly said it **to her sister**. ?
 36) Susan had been working for this company **for 30 years** before she retired. ?
 37) Jack and Jill had to speak English **with their guests**. ?
 38) Tom will be allowed to drive a car **in a year**. ?
 39) Brigit has been to Scotland **twice**. ?
 40) Physics starts at **8**. ?

c) ZÁPORNÁ OTÁZKA

PLNÝ TVAR

Does he not like it? *Nepáči sa mu to?*

SKRÁTENÝ TVAR

Doesn't he like it? *Čo sa mu to nepáči?*

Použitie otázky so skrátenými tvarmi.

a) na potvrdenie domnienky

Didn't they hear that? *Nepočuli to? (Ja myslím, že áno.)*

b) na vyjadrenie údivu alebo prekvapenia

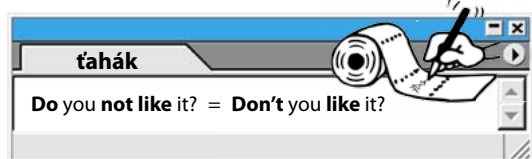
Don't you know it? *Ty to vari nevieš?*

c) na vyjadrenie obdivu

Isn't she beautiful? *Nie je krásna?*

d) na vyjadrenie nespokojnosti

Can't you stop it? *Nemôžeš s tým prestať?*



Cvičenie 23.3. Utvorte záporné otázky. Použite skrátené tvary.

- I hope Gwen won't be there.
Why? her? YOU/LIKE
- We haven't seen Paul for years.
How come? him at the party last week? YOU/MEET
- She doesn't want to go to the concert.
Why? interested in music? SHE/BE
- I am afraid I will have to rent a car.
Why? your own? YOU/HAVE
- Let's go shopping.
Why? it? JAMES/DO

d) PODMETOVÁ OTÁZKA

Ak sa pýtame na podmet (1. pád), má otázka slovosled oznamovacej vety.

PODMETOVÁ OTÁZKA

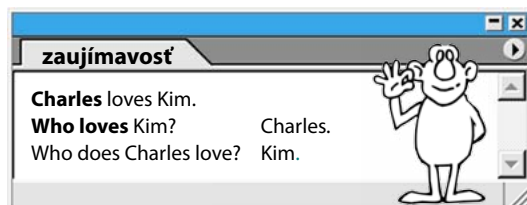
Who brought it? *Kto to priniesol?*

Who knows him? *Kto ho pozná?*

PREDMETOVÁ OTÁZKA

Who did you bring it to? *Komu si to priniesol?*

Who does he know? *Koho pozná?*



Cvičenie 23.4. Utvorte otázky s who alebo what.

- James** saw Fiona.?
- James saw **Fiona**.?
- Paul has got **a book**.?
- The Smiths had **a bad accident** last night.?
- Jim** lost the key.?
- Frank phoned **Ben**??
- Jill** won a million.?
- Chuck** loves Eve.?
- The Parkers** have bought a new car.?
- The children broke **the window**.?
- Phil** agrees with their decision.?
- Jeremy agrees **with his uncle**.?

Otázka

- 13) The boys were talking **about Alice**.?
.....?
- 14) **Liv** got lost.?
.....?
- 15) Alan married **Alison**.?
.....?

e) NEPRIAMA OTÁZKA

Nepriama otázka má slovosled oznamovacej vety.
Zvyčajne ju uvádzajú nasledujúce výrazy:

I don't know...	<i>Neviem, ...</i>
I know...	<i>Viem, ...</i>
I don't remember...	<i>Nepamätám si, ...</i>
I remember...	<i>Pamätám si, ...</i>
Tell me...	<i>Povedz mi, ...</i>
Please explain...	<i>Vysvetli, prosím...</i>
Do you know...	<i>Vieš, ...</i>
Have you any idea ...	<i>Máš poňatie, ...</i>
I have no idea...	<i>Nemám ani poňatia, ...</i>
I wonder...	<i>Rád by som vedel, ...</i>
Who knows...	<i>Kto vie, ...</i>
Can you tell me...	<i>Môžeš mi povedať, ...</i>
Don't ask me...	<i>Nepýtaj sa ma, ...</i>

Priama otázka	Nepriama otázka
What time is it ?	Do you know what time it is ?
Where does he come from?	I don't know where he comes from.
When did it happen ?	He doesn't remember when it happened .
Will they come ?	I wonder if they will come .


ťahák

Priama otázka

Where **does** Sarah **work**?

Nepriama otázka

Do you know where Sarah **works**?




zaujímavosť

if či whether azda

I don't know if/whether they will be there.

Neviem, či/azda tam budú.



Cvičenie 23.5. Utvorte nepriame otázky.

- Is she reading a newspaper?
Ask her
- Have they ever been to Moscow?
I don't know
- When did you first meet your wife?
I don't remember
- How much does this skirt cost?
Can you tell me ..?
- Where are the children?
Have you any idea ..?
- When does the bus leave?
I don't remember ..?
- What time does the post office open?
Do you know ..?
- Is it true?
Tell me ..?
- Why did you do it?
Please, explain ..?
- Did they break up?
Do you know ..?
- How much will the holiday cost?
Do you know ..?
- Where are you?
They will be wondering ..?
- Where does Val work?
Tell me ..?
- What were they talking about?
I don't remember ..?
- Are they still together?
Who knows ..?

24. Tvorenie slov predponami

a) PREDPONY TVORIACE OPOZITÁ

DIS			
agree	súhlasiť	disagree	nesúhlasiť
appear	objaviť sa	disappear	zmiznúť
honest	čestný	dishonest	nečestný
like	páčiť sa	dislike	nepáčiť sa
advantage	výhoda	disadvantage	nevýhoda
approve	potvrdiť	disapprove	vyvrátiť

UN			
happy	šťastný	unhappy	nešťastný
believable	uveriteľný	unbelievable	neuveriteľný
usual	obvyklý	unusual	neobvyklý
known	známy	unknown	neznámy
reliable	spoľahlivý	unreliable	nespoľahlivý
lock	zamknúť	unlock	odomknúť
tie	zaviazať	untie	rozviazať
certain	istý	uncertain	neistý
important	dôležitý	unimportant	nedôležitý
natural	prirodzený	unnatural	neprirodzený

IM			
possible	možný	impossible	nemožný
polite	slušný	impolite	neslušný
moral	morálny	immoral	nemorálny
patient	trpezlivý	impatient	netrpezlivý
probable	pravdepodobný	improbable	nepravdepodobný

IN			
direct	priamy	indirect	nepriamy
expensive	drahý	inexpensive	lacný
correct	správny	incorrect	nesprávny
visible	viditeľný	invisible	neviditeľný
experienced	skúsený	inexperienced	neskúsený
definite	určitý	indefinite	neurčitý
exhaustible	vyčerpatelný	inexhaustible	nevyčerpatelný
complete	kompletný	incomplete	nekompletný

IL			
legal	legálny	illegal	nelegálny
legible	čitateľný	illegible	nečitateľný
logical	logický	illogical	nelogický

IR			
regular	pravidelný	irregular	nepravidelný
resistible	vzdorujúci	irresistible	nevzdorujúci
responsible	zodpovedný	irresponsible	nezodpovedný
rational	racionálny	irrational	iracionálny

NON			
smoker	fajčiar	non-smoker	nefajčiar
sexist	sexistický	non-sexist	nesexistický
racist	rasistický	non-racist	nerasistický
addictive	návykový	non-addictive	nenávykový
believer	veriaci	non-believer	neveriaci
alcoholic	alkoholický	non-alcoholic	nealkoholický
biological	biologický	non-biological	nebiologický
existent	existujúci	non-existent	neexistujúci
fat	s tukom	non-fat	bez tuku
flammable	horľavý	non-flammable	nehorľavý
profit	zisk	non-profit	neziskový
returnable	vratný	non-returnable	nevratný

zapamätaj si

Predpony tvoriace opozitá:

IL- illegal

IM- impolite

IR- irregular

UN- unknown

DIS- disagree

NON- non-smoker

Tvorenie slov predponami

Cvičenie 24.1. Utvorte opozitá.

- 1) reliable
- 2) believer
- 3) resistible
- 4) believable
- 5) polite
- 6) expensive
- 7) moral
- 8) addictive
- 9) approve
- 10) experienced
- 11) logical
- 12) natural
- 13) probable
- 14) regular
- 15) existent
- 16) honest
- 17) exhaustible
- 18) legible
- 19) tie
- 20) complete

b) OSTATNÉ PREDPONY

RE znovu			
build	stavať	rebuild	prestavať
write	písať	rewrite	prepísať
open	otvoriť	reopen	znovu otvoriť
tell	rozprávať	retell	znovu vyrozprávať
marry	vydať sa, oženiť sa	remarry	znovu sa vydať, oženiť

OVER príliš, pre-			
sleep	spať	oversleep	prespať
charge	(na)účtovať	overcharge	predražiť
estimate	oceniť	overestimate	preceňiť
eat	jesť	overeat	prejedať sa
flow	tiecť	overflow	pretečť

UNDER málo, pod-			
ground	zem	underground	podzemie
estimate	oceniť	underestimate	podceňiť
paid	platený	underpaid	málo platený
age	vek	underage	mladistvý
cook	variť	undercook	nedovariť

MIS zle, nesprávne			
understand	pochopiť	misunderstand	zle pochopiť
print	tlačiť	misprint	preklep, tlačová chyba
hear	počuť	mishear	prepočuť
use	použiť	misuse	zneužiť
lead	viesť	mislead	uviesť do omylu

BI dvoj-	
bilingual	dvojazyčný
bilateral	dvojstranný
biped	dvojnohý
biannual	polročný, vychádzajúci 2-krát ročne

DE od-	
deforest	odlesniť
decentralise	decentralizovať
decode	dešifrovať
decapitate	sťat' hlavu

EN tvorenie slovies			
rich	bohatý	enrich	obohatiť
large	veľký	enlarge	zväčšiť
able	schopný	enable	umožniť
close	ohradené miesto	enclose	ohradiť, uzavrieť
code	kód	encode	zakódovať
slave	otrok	enslave	zotročiť

vysvetlivka

RE- znovu OVER- príliš UNDER- málo MIS- zle BI- dvoj- DE- od- EN- sloveso	retell overestimate underpaid misunderstand bilingual decapitate enlarge
--	---



Cvičenie 24.2. *Napíšte k definíciám anglické výrazy s predponami.*

- 1) to cut off the head
- 2) to make larger
- 3) walking on two legs
- 4) to think you have understood when you haven't
- 5) happening twice a year
- 6) to cut down trees in a large area
- 7) difficult to burn
- 8) to open again
- 9) younger than the lowest age
- 10) to think that something is bigger, more important, etc.
- 11) without a profit
- 12) to make a slave of someone
- 13) to use something in a way that wasn't intended
- 14) using two languages
- 15) to make something possible

25. Tvorenie slov príponami

a) TVORENIE PODSTATNÝCH MIEN

-ER		
teach	teacher	učiteľ
dance	dancer	tanečník
sing	singer	spevák
work	worker	robotník
farm	farmer	farmár
manage	manager	manažér
bake	baker	pekár
football	footballer	futbalista
garden	gardener	záhradník
drive	driver	šofér
lead	leader	vodca
follow	follower	stúpenec
speak	speaker	rečník
employ	employer	zamestnávateľ
begin	beginner	začiatočník

-OR		
operate	operator	operátor
translate	translator	prekladateľ
act	actor	herec
direct	director	riaditeľ
inspect	inspector	inšpektor
instruct	instructor	inštruktör
sail	sailor	námorník
advise	advisor	poradca
visitor	visitor	návštevník
collect	collector	zberateľ
invent	inventor	vynálezca
dictate	dictator	diktátor

zapamätaj si	
teach	teacher
translate	translator

zaujímavosť	
advice	rada
advise	radiť

-IST		
journal	journalist	novinár
art	artist	umelec
psychiatry	psychiatrist	psychiater
psychology	psychologist	psychológ
physics	physicist	fyzik
economy	economist	ekonóm

-IAN		
music	musician	hudobník
electricity	electrician	elektrikár
politics	politician	politik
mathematics	mathematician	matematik
optics	optician	optik
	physician	lekár

pikantnosť	
physicist	fyzik
physician	lekár

-EE		
employ	employee	zamestnanec
address	addressee	adresát
pay	payee	prijemca peňazí
trust	trustee	člen správnej rady
refer	referee	rozhodca

pikantnosť	
employer	zamestnávateľ
employee	zamestnanec

zaujímavosť			
pay	payee	payer	payment
platiť	prijemca	platiteľ	platba

-SHIP		
dictator	dictatorship	<i>diktatúra</i>
friend	friendship	<i>priateľstvo</i>
member	membership	<i>členstvo</i>
leader	leadership	<i>vedenie</i>
scholar	scholarship	<i>štipendium</i>

zaujímavosť

lead	leader	leadership
<i> viesť</i>	<i> vodca</i>	<i> vedenie</i>
dictate	dictator	dictatorship
<i> diktovať</i>	<i> diktátor</i>	<i> diktatúra</i>

-DOM		
king	kingdom	<i>kráľovstvo</i>
bore	boredom	<i>nuda</i>
wise	wisdom	<i>múdroosť</i>
free	freedom	<i>sloboda</i>

pikantnosť

The UK =
The United **Kingdom** of Great Britain and Northern Ireland

-ANCE, -ENCE, -ANCY, -ENCY, -CY		
distant	distance	<i>vzdialenosť</i>
enter	entrance	<i>vstup</i>
assist	assistance	<i>pomoc</i>
tolerate	tolerance	<i>tolerancia</i>
attend	attendance	<i>dochádzka</i>
different	difference	<i>odlišnosť</i>
silent	silence	<i>ticho</i>
infant	infancy	<i>rané detstvo</i>
consistent	consistency	<i>konzistencia</i>
tend	tendency	<i>tendencia</i>
accurate	accuracy	<i>presnosť</i>

-HOOD		
child	childhood	<i>detstvo</i>
brother	brotherhood	<i>bratstvo</i>
neighbour	neighbourhood	<i>susedstvo</i>
mother	motherhood	<i>materstvo</i>

-MENT		
measure	measurement	<i>meranie</i>
govern	government	<i>vláda</i>
employ	employment	<i>zamestnanosť</i>
manage	management	<i>riadenie</i>
improve	improvement	<i>zlepšenie</i>
announce	announcement	<i>oznámenie</i>

-ING		
build	building	<i>budova</i>
feel	feeling	<i>pocit</i>
meet	meeting	<i>schôdza</i>
begin	beginning	<i>začiatok</i>
mean	meaning	<i>význam</i>

-ION		
suggest	suggestion	<i>návrh</i>
decide	decision	<i>rozhodnutie</i>
elect	election	<i>voľby</i>
discuss	discussion	<i>diskusia</i>
assume	assumption	<i>predpoklad</i>

-ATION		
inform	information	<i>informácia</i>
separate	separation	<i>separácia</i>
combine	combination	<i>kombinácia</i>
operate	operation	<i>operácia</i>
admire	admiration	<i>obdiv</i>

-AL		
approve	approval	<i>súhlas</i>
refuse	refusal	<i>odmietnutie</i>
remove	removal	<i>odstránenie</i>

-NESS		
happy	happiness	<i>šťastie</i>
lonely	loneliness	<i>osamelosť</i>
kind	kindness	<i>láskavosť</i>
ill	illness	<i>choroba</i>
weak	weakness	<i>slabosť</i>

Tvorenie slov príponami

-ITY		
active	activity	aktivita
stupid	stupidity	hlúposť
visible	visibility	viditeľnosť
clear	clarity	jasnosť

-TH		
deep	depth	hĺbka
long	length	dĺžka
wide	width	šírka
strong	strength	sila

Cvičenie 25.1. Utvorte podstatné mená.

- 1) approve
- 2) separate
- 3) lonely
- 4) deep
- 5) suggest
- 6) king
- 7) employ
- 8) refuse
- 9) weak
- 10) wide
- 11) mean
- 12) free
- 13) friend
- 14) assume
- 15) strong
- 16) improve
- 17) attend
- 18) remove
- 19) brother
- 20) different
- 21) wise
- 22) enter
- 23) kind
- 24) visible
- 25) long
- 26) admire
- 27) stupid
- 28) elect
- 29) silent
- 30) accurate

b) TVORENIE PRÍDAVNÝCH MIEN

-AL		
culture	cultural	kultúrny
nation	national	národný
nature	natural	prírodný
occasion	occasional	príležitostný

-ICAL		
logics	logical	logický
history	historical	historický
politics	political	politický

pikantnosť

historic	pamätný
historical	historický
economic	hospodársky
economical	hospodárny



-Y		
hair	hairy	chlpatý
ice	icy	zľadovatený
stone	stony	kamenitý
noise	noisy	hlučný
dirt	dirty	špinavý
smell	smelly	smradľavý
bone	bony	kostnatý
rain	rainy	daždivý
sun	sunny	slnecný
anger	angry	nahnevaný
hunger	hungry	hladný
stick	sticky	lepkavý
spike	spiky	špicatý


-LY		
friend	friendly	priateľský
coward	cowardly	zbabelý
mother	motherly	materský
love	lovely	rozkošný
heaven	heavenly	nebeský
month	monthly	mesačný

-OUS		
danger	dangerous	<i>nebezpečný</i>
fame	famous	<i>slávny</i>
courage	courageous	<i>odvážny</i>
ambition	ambitious	<i>ctížiadostivý</i>

-FUL		
hope	hopeful	<i>nádejný</i>
use	useful	<i>užitočný</i>
care	careful	<i>opatrný</i>
help	helpful	<i>prospešný</i>
forget	forgetful	<i>zábudlivý</i>

vysvetlivka


care + full = careful



-LESS		
hope	hopeless	<i>bez nádejný</i>
use	useless	<i>neužitočný</i>
care	careless	<i>neopatrný</i>
end	endless	<i>nekonečný</i>
help	helpless	<i>bezmocný</i>

zapamätaj si

use	useful	useless
úžitok	užitočný	neužitočný
help	helpful	helpless
pomoc	pomocný	bezmocný
care	careful	careless
opatrnosť	opatrný	neopatrný




-ISH		
child	childish	<i>detinský</i>
fool	foolish	<i>pochabý</i>
green	greenish	<i>nazelenalý</i>

-EN		
gold	golden	<i>zlatý</i>
wool	woollen	<i>vlnený</i>
wood	wooden	<i>drevený</i>

zaujímavosť

gold	<i>zlatý (vyrobený zo zlata)</i>
gold watch	<i>zlaté hodinky</i>
golden	<i>zlatý (prenesene)</i>
golden age	<i>zlatý vek</i>



-IBLE, -ABLE		
convert	convertible	<i>premeniteľný</i>
rely	reliable	<i>spoľahlivý</i>
change	changeable	<i>premenlivý</i>
agree	agreeable	<i>prijemný</i>
accept	acceptable	<i>prijateľný</i>
measure	measurable	<i>merateľný</i>

pikantnosť

convert	<i>premeniť</i>
convertible	<i>premeniteľný</i>
convertible	<i>kabriolet</i>



Cvičenie 25.2. Utvorte prídavné mená.

- 1) spike
- 2) child
- 3) anger
- 4) heaven
- 5) danger
- 6) fame
- 7) friend
- 8) end
- 9) courage
- 10) occasion
- 11) smell
- 12) coward
- 13) ambition
- 14) politics
- 15) forget
- 16) accept
- 17) fool
- 18) bone
- 19) love
- 20) care

Tvorenie slov príponami

c) TVORENIE SLOVIES


-EN		
short	shorten	<i>skrátit'</i>
broad	broaden	<i>rozšírit'</i>
bright	brighten	<i>rozjasniť</i>
dark	darken	<i>stmavnúť</i>
tight	tighten	<i>pritiahnúť</i>
loose	loosen	<i>povolit'</i>
length	lengthen	<i>predĺžiť</i>

-ISE		
author	authorise	<i>autorizovať</i>
colony	colonise	<i>kolonizovať</i>
summary	summarise	<i>zhrnúť</i>
critics	criticise	<i>kritizovať</i>
economy	economise	<i>šetriť</i>
memory	memorise	<i>naučiť sa naspamäť</i>

pikantnosť

Pri slovesách s koncovkou -ISE je rozdiel medzi britskou a americkou angličtinou.

UK -ISE authorise colonise summarise criticise economise memorise	US -IZE authorize colonize summarize criticize economize memorize
--	--



-FY	
simplify	<i>zjednodušiť</i>
specify	<i>špecifikovať</i>
justify	<i>ospravedlniť</i>
modify	<i>modifikovať</i>
clarify	<i>vyjasniť</i>
satisfy	<i>uspokojiť</i>

Cvičenie 25.3. Utvorte slovesá.

- 1) tight.....
- 2) memory.....
- 3) short.....
- 4) simple.....
- 5) economy.....
- 6) author.....
- 7) strength.....
- 8) just.....
- 9) summary.....
- 10) bright.....

26. Spájacie výrazy

a) PREHLAD SPÁJACÍCH VÝRAZOV

and	a
both... and	ako... tak, nielen... ale aj
but	ale
however	avšak
either... or	buď... alebo
neither... nor	ani... ani
nevertheless	predsa len
because	pretože
as	pretože
for	pre, lebo
in particular	predovšetkým
in case	pre prípad
if	ak, keby
unless	ledaže, keby nie
when	keď, keď
till/until	dokiaľ nie
so that	takže, aby
apart from	okrem
at first	najskôr
to start with	po prvé, najskôr
first	najskôr, ako prvý
first of all	(zo všetkého) najskôr
then	potom
after that	potom
next	potom
afterwards	potom, neskôr
finally	nakoniec
in the end	nakoniec
to sum up	zrekapitulovať
in conclusion	na záver
on the whole	vcelku
altogether	celkom, úplne
all in all	celkom, úplne
although	hoci, i keď
though	hoci, i keď
even though	hoci, i keď
in spite of	napriek
despite	napriek



odkaz

Ďalšie spájacie výrazy sú uvedené pri jednotlivých druhoch viet v kapitolách 27 – 33.

b) FIRST × AT FIRST

Let's do the washing up **first** and then we can go swimming.

Najskôr umyjeme riad a potom môžeme ísť plávať.

At first I didn't understand him but then I got used to his accent.

Najprv som mu nerozumel, ale potom som si zvykol na jeho prízvuk.

c) BECAUSE × BECAUSE OF

We didn't go to the forest **because** it was raining.

Neišli sme do lesa, pretože pršalo.

We didn't go to the forest **because of** the rain.

Neišli sme do lesa pre dážď.

zapamätaj si

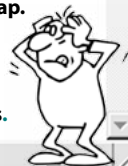
BECAUSE + VETA

He got lost **because he didn't have a map.**

PODSTATNÉ MENO

ALEBO ZÁMENO

He got lost **because of** bad instructions.



d) ALTHOUGH/THOUGH/ /EVEN THOUGH × IN SPITE OF/DESPITE

Although it was raining we went for a walk.

Hoci pršalo, išli sme na prechádzku.

We went for a walk **despite** the rain.

Išli sme na prechádzku napriek dažďu.

Although she was tired she went with us.

Hoci bola unavená, išla s nami.

She went with us **in spite of** being tired.

Išla s nami napriek tomu, že bola unavená.

zaujímavosť

ALTHOUGH = THOUGH = EVEN THOUGH
IN SPITE OF = DESPITE




Spájacie výrazy

zapamätaj si

ALTHOUGH + VETA
Although the weather was bad,
 we enjoyed our holiday.

IN SPIKE OF + PODSTATNÉ MENO,
 GERUNDIUM ALEBO ZÁMENO
 We enjoyed our holiday **despite the bad weather.**


Cvičenie 26.1. Doplňte do viet spájacie výrazy z rámečka.

ALTHOUGH	AT FIRST	BECAUSE OF
IN SPIKE OF	FIRST	BECAUSE

- 1) We got there on time the traffic.
- 2) They didn't understand their French teacher they had spent a year in Paris.
- 3) I wanted to give up but then I decided not to.
- 4) Suzy couldn't walk her broken leg.
- 5) Jim left the party before midnight he has to get up early tomorrow.
- 6) read the text and then answer the questions below.
- 7) He never says hello to me living next door.
- 8) they hadn't been invited, they arrived at the ceremony.
- 9) I could hardly recognise her her new haircut.
- 10) I didn't know what he was talking about but then I realised I had heard it before.

Test 9

- 1) Jim gave, not to his wife.
 A) Wendy roses B) to Wendy roses
 C) roses to Wendy D) roses Wendy
- 2) does he look? He is rather fat.
 A) How, like B) What, - C) How, - D) What, like
- 3) The car doesn't cost much. It is
 A) inexpensive B) unexpensive
 C) imexpensive D) ilexpensive
- 4) Mr Robin is a famous Scottish
 A) politics B) political C) politic D) politician

- 5) I didn't understand him at all, but then I got used to his strange accent.
 A) At first B) First C) Firstly D) The first
- 6) She doesn't cook.
 A) She often eats out. B) Often she eats out.
 C) She eats out often D) Out she eats often.
- 7) They go on holiday with their parents.
 A) How do they go on holiday with?
 B) What do they go on holiday with?
 C) Who do they go on holiday with?
 D) Who do they go on holiday?
- 8) This restaurant is only for
 A) unsmokers B) nonsmokers
 C) non-smokers D) not smokers
- 9) A person whose job is connected with matter and energy is called a
 A) physician B) physicist C) physic D) physics
- 10) They went skiing the snow storm.
 A) although B) in spite C) despite D) because of
- 11) Jack isn't selfish.
 A) So, isn't his brother. B) So is his brother.
 C) Neither isn't his brother. D) Neither is his brother.
- 12) I know it.
 A) Who did tell you? B) Who tell you?
 C) Who told you? D) What did tell you?
- 13) It's highly that Phil will agree.
 A) improbable B) inprobable
 C) unprobable D) ilprobable
- 14) A person who employs people is an
 A) employ B) employment
 C) employer D) employee
- 15) they were late they didn't apologise.
 A) Thought B) In spite of C) Despite D) Although
- 16) Could you tell me what?
 A) time is it B) is the time
 C) time it is D) the time it is
- 17) I apologise, there must be some
 A) misunderstanding B) ununderstanding
 C) inunderstanding D) non-understanding
- 18) Careful, the bath may
 A) underflow B) overflow C) reflow D) enflow
- 19) The weather in England can be very
 A) changing B) change
 C) changable D) changeable
- 20) The ferry was delayed the strong wind.
 A) because B) because of C) in spite of D) despite

27. Podmienkové vety

PODMIENKOVÉ SPOJKY

if	ak, keď, keby
unless	ak nie, iba ak, keby nie
provided that	s podmienkou, že
providing that	s podmienkou, že
supposing that	za predpokladu, že
on condition that	s podmienkou, že
in case (that)	v prípade, že; pre prípad, že

a) TYP 1 – Reálne

HLAVNÁ VETA	IF	VEDĽAJŠIA VETA
BUDÚCI ČAS		PRÍTOMNÝ ČAS

I **will go** there if the weather **is** fine.


Pôjdem tam, ak bude pekné.

zapamätaj si

Po if nesmie nasledovať will!

I will do it **if you ask** me.

Urobím to, ak ma požiadaš.



ČIARKA

Čiarka sa v súvetí píše len vtedy, keď hlavná veta nasleduje po vedľajšej.

If you are late, I will not wait.

Ak budeš meškať, nebudem čakať.

– ale –

I will not wait if you are late.

Nebudem čakať, ak budeš meškať.

vysvetlivka

Pred if sa čiarka nepíše.


He will come if you invite him.

Príde, ak ho pozveš.

– ale –

If you invite him, he will come.

Ak ho pozveš, príde.



Cvičenie 27.1. Dajte slovesá v zátvorke do správneho tvaru.

- If you (DO) it again, you (HAVE TO) leave!
- They (NOT COME) if they (NOT BE) invited.
- What she. (DO) if she (GET) lost?
- If Tim (MEET) his friend, they (GO) to the pub tonight.
- You (NEVER UNDERSTAND) other people if you (NOT LISTEN) to them.
- I am afraid he (MISS) the bus if he (NOT HURRY).
- I don't think Jane (BE) surprised if she (FAIL) the exam.
- Mr Parker (CHANGE) his job if he (BE) offered a better one.
- If you (NOT FEEL) well tomorrow, you (STAY) at home?
- If the robber (BE) caught, he (BE) imprisoned.
- If it (STOP) raining, we (GO) for a walk.
- If you (EAT) too much sugar, you (BE) fat.
- I (GO) to the party provided you (GO).
- Do you think they (HELP) us if we (ASK) them?
- If my salary (NOT BE) increased, I (START) looking for another job.

IF × IN CASE OF

I will take an umbrella **if it rains**.

Vezmem si dáždnik, ak bude pršať.

I will take an umbrella **in case it rains**.

Vezmem si dáždnik pre prípad, že bude pršať.

zapamätaj si

in case = pre prípad

if = v prípade, že



Podmienkové vety

Cvičenie 27.2. Doplňte do viet **if** alebo **in case** a správny tvar slovesa.

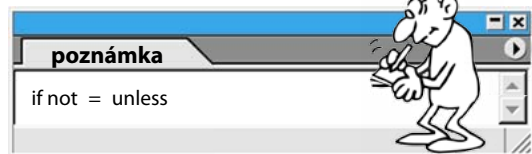
- I won't go out tonight.
Jack RING
- I won't go for a walk.
it RAIN
- You should take a map.
you. lost. GET
- I'll give you a ring.
I. lost. GET
- They are going to install a smoke alarm.
there a fire. BE
- You should go to the lost property
you. your luggage. LOSE
- I will attach a label with my address to my luggage
..... I it. LOSE
- Hang on, I'll withdraw some money from the cash
machine. we it. NEED
- I will withdraw some money from my account
..... there some. BE
- I will arrange travel insurance
I sick in Italy. GET

IF x UNLESS

Pri podmienkových vetách typu 1 môžeme použiť spojku **unless**.

He won't be there **if they don't invite** him. = He won't be there **unless they invite** him.

Nebude tam, keď ho nepozvú.



Cvičenie 27.3. Vyberte správnu možnosť.

- UNLESS/IF** you wear a warm coat, you will catch a cold.
- UNLESS/IF** he is more careful, he will have an accident.
- They will be there **UNLESS/IF** they are invited.
- Jim will go skiing **UNLESS/IF** there is enough snow.
- She will be allowed to go with us **UNLESS/IF** her mother knows who she is going there with.
- I am afraid you will have a lot of problems **UNLESS/IF** you apologise for what you have said.

- I don't know why he isn't here **UNLESS/IF** he didn't get the invitation.
- Lucy won't pass the exam **UNLESS/IF** she doesn't study.
- I will be there at 6 **UNLESS/IF** you call me to be there later.
- He won't help them **UNLESS/IF** they ask him personally.

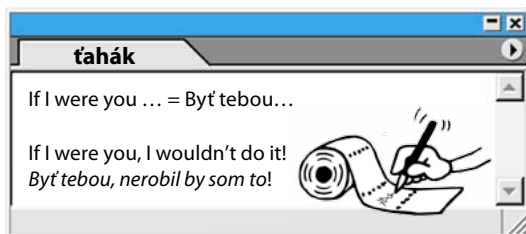
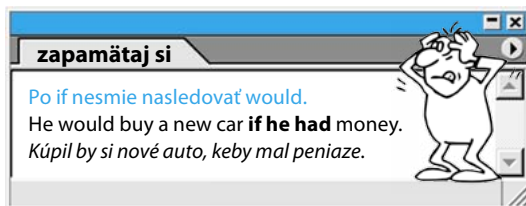
b) TYP 2 – Nereálne v prítomnosti

HLAVNÁ VETA	IF	VEDĽAJŠIA VETA
PRÍTOMNÝ KONDICIONÁL		MINULÝ ČAS

I **would go** there if the weather **was (were)** fine.
But the weather is terrible.

Išiel by som tam, keby bolo pekné. Je však škaredo.

! Were sa môže použiť pre všetky osoby.



Cvičenie 27.4. Utvorte podmienkové vety typu 2.

- I don't go out very often because I am busy.
If
- This car is too expensive for me to buy.
If
- It is raining. We can't go for a walk.
If
- It is serious that is why I bother you.

- If
- 5) Paul works shifts. That is why he is so tired.
If
- 6) We can't buy a new camera because we don't have enough money.
If
- 7) Fiona is fed up with her job because she has to do the same things every day.
If
- 8) I don't know it. That is why I am asking.
If
- 9) The Cunninghams live in the city because they work there.
If
- 10) I am not going to watch TV tonight because there is nothing interesting on.
If

c) TYP 3 – Nereálne v minulosti

HLAVNÁ VETA	IF	VEDĽAJŠIA VETA
MINULÝ KONDICIONÁL		PREDMINULÝ ČAS

I **would have gone** there if the weather **had been** fine.
But the weather was terrible.


Bol by som tam išiel, keby bolo bývalo pekne.

Ale bolo škaredo.

zaujímavosť


Podmienkové vety typu 2 a 3 sú nereálne, situácia je opačná a nie je reálne, aby sa zmenila.

I **would** go there if I **had** time. (now)
But I don't have time.
*Išiel by som tam, keby som mal čas.
(teraz) Ale nemám čas.*



zaujímavosť

I **would have gone** there if I **had had** time. (yesterday) But I didn't have time.
*Bol by som tam išiel, keby som bol mal čas.
(včera) Ale nemal som čas.*



Cvičenie 27.5. Utvorte podmienkové vety typu 3.

- Fred was late for school because he missed the bus.
If
- The accident happened because the road was wet and slippery.
If
- They got lost because they didn't have a map.
If
- Mum wasn't at home, so she didn't prepare lunch.
If
- James got drunk and lost his key last night.
If
- I didn't do it because I wasn't told.
If
- The boss shouted at her, so she got upset.
If
- Peter didn't understand because the man didn't speak English.
If
- I didn't have a camera, so I didn't take photos.
If
- There were no people, so nobody called the ambulance.
If

Podmienkové vety

MIXED CONDITIONALS (zmiešané kondicionály)

If I **had studied** harder (**yesterday**), I **wouldn't be** nervous (**now**).

Keby som sa bol (včera) viac učil, nebol by som (teraz) taký nervózný.

Cvičenie 27.6. Dajte slovesá do správneho tvaru.

- 1) If they NOT BE at the party last night, they NOT BE tired now.
- 2) She UNDERSTAND English better if she NOT SKIP so many English lessons last year.
- 3) If we NOT EAT something bad last night, we NOT BE sick today.
- 4) Jill STARVE now if she HAVE breakfast.
- 5) If Mr Parker NOT LEAVE the key in his office, he NOT HAVE TO be standing in front of the house now.

INVERZIA

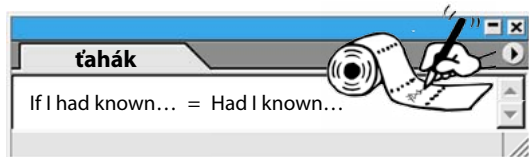
V podmienkových vetách sa môže vyskytovať inverzia (nepriamy slovosled).

If I had known it, I wouldn't have asked. = **Had I known** it, I wouldn't have asked.

Keby som to bol vedel, nebol by som sa pýtal.

If I were you, I wouldn't believe him. = **Were I you**, I wouldn't believe him.

Byť tebou, neveril by som mu.



SHOULD

Should má v podmienkových vetách význam **azda**.

If there **should** be any changes, you will be informed in time. = Should there be any changes, you will be informed in time.

Keby azda nastali akékoľvek zmeny, budete včas informovaní.

WILL a WOULD v podmienkových vetách

V podmienkových vetách môže byť **will** alebo **would**, ak sa vyjadruje zdvorilosť alebo láskavosť.

If you **will** wait a moment, I **will** arrange it.

Keď láskavo chvíľu počkáte, zariadim to.

If you **would** sign it here, I **would** give you your money now.

Keby ste to tu láskavo podpísali, dal by som vám tie peniaze hneď.

PODMIENKOVÉ VETY × PREDMETOVÉ VETY

Od podmienkových viet treba odlišiť predmetové vety, ktoré tiež uvádza spojka **if**. V predmetových vetách môže po **if** nasledovať budúci čas.

I don't know **if he will come**. (predmetová)

Neviem, či príde. Pýtame sa na predmet. Čo neviem?

I will tell you **if he comes**. (podmienková)

Poviem ti, keď príde. Pýtame sa pod akou podmienku.

Cvičenie 27.7. Doplňte do viet slovesá v správnom tvare.

- 1) If people how to talk, there silence all over the world.
FORGET, BE
- 2) If Jane the train, she walk to school.
MISS, HAVE TO
- 3) If they to bed earlier last night, they tired today. GO, NOT BE
- 4) If you me before, I there with you yesterday.
TELL, GO
- 5) Jim her with it unless she him for help. NOT HELP, ASK
- 6) If I younger, I round the world. BE, TRAVEL
- 7) They a taxi if they money last night. TAKE, HAVE
- 8) If you him tomorrow, you him to join us? SEE, TELL
- 9) What you if you a million? DO, WIN
- 10) If I you, I that!
BE, NOT DO

28. Časové vety

ČASOVÉ SPOJKY

when	<i>keď, až</i>
after	<i>(potom) keď</i>
before	<i>skôr ako</i>
as long as	<i>pokiaľ, tak dlho</i>
till, until	<i>pokiaľ nie, kým</i>
as soon as	<i>len čo</i>
while	<i>zatiaľ čo, kým</i>
by the time	<i>až (v tom čase)</i>
next time	<i>nabudúce, inakedy</i>

Po týchto spojkách sa používa prítomný čas na vyjadrenie budúcnosti.

HLAVNÁ VETA	WHEN	VEDĽAJŠIA VETA
BUDÚCI ČAS		PRÍTOMNÝ ČAS

He will call me as soon as he arrives in LA.


Zavolá mi, len čo pricestuje do LA.

zapamätaj si

Po **when, before, after, as soon as, while, by the time, until, next time** nesmie nasledovať budúci čas!

I will leave **before she comes**.

She will leave **before I come**.



Ak sú v hlavnej a vedľajšej vete nesúbežné deje a keď chceme vyjadriť, že jeden dej sa skončil, použijeme predprítomný čas.

When I have eaten all the fruit, I will have to go shopping.

Keď zjem všetko to ovocie, budem musieť ísť nakúpiť.

Cvičenie 28.1. Spojte vety do súvetia.

Použite uvedené spojky.

- I will read the newspaper. But first I will wash the dishes.
I BEFORE
- Jane will leave school and then she is going to travel.
Jane AFTER

- John will be cooking. Lucy will be sleeping.

John WHILE

- We are going to the USA. We will visit Jack.

We WHEN

- I know it will happen again. I won't do the same.

I NEXT TIME

- I hope he will leave soon. Then I will tell you something.

I AS SOON AS

- They will be waiting here for you to bring it.

They UNTIL

- Will you finish it first? Then you can leave.

You can AFTER

- We will turn off the light and then we will go to bed.

We BEFORE

- I need you to be there. I won't enter the room.

I UNTIL

WHEN × IF

I am going to New York. **When I am** there, I will send you a postcard.

Idem do New Yorku. **Keď tam budem**, pošlem ti pohľadnicu.

I am not sure whether I will go to New York. But **if I go** there, I will send you a postcard.

Neviem iste, či pôjdem do New Yorku. No **ak tam pôjdem**, pošlem ti pohľadnicu.

poznámka


Použitie časov v časových vetách sa riadi rovnakými pravidlami ako v podmienkových vetách typu 1.

He will do it **when he comes**.

Urobí to, keď príde.

He will do it **if he comes**.

Urobí to, ak príde.



Časové vety

Cvičenie 28.2. *Doplňte do viet if alebo when a sloveso z rámčeka v správnom tvare.*

not want	be	see	come	be
----------	----	-----	------	----

- 1) We are leaving for London next week.
we there, we will see the Tower.
- 2) I may see Jim next week.
I him, I will ask him about it.
- 3) I might be late this evening.
I , don't wait for me.
- 4) They are going on holiday.
they back, they will let you know.
- 5) I want you to join us, but
you to, you needn't.

ČASOVÉ VETY × PREDMETOVÉ VETY

Od časových viet treba odlišovať predmetové vety, ktoré sú tiež uvádzané when.

I will tell you when he will come. (predmetová)

Poviem ti, kedy príde. Pýtame sa na predmet: Čo ti poviem?

I will tell you when he comes. (časová)

Poviem ti, keď príde. Pýtame sa na čas: Kedy ti poviem?

29. Želacie vety

I WISH *prial by som si*
IF ONLY *kiež by, bodaj by*

a) ŽELANIE V PRÍTOMNOSTI

I WISH + MINULÝ ČAS

IF ONLY + MINULÝ ČAS

I wish you were here. (But you are not here.)

Prial by som si, aby si tu bol. (Lenže ty tu nie si.)

If only he didn't know it. (But he does.)

Bodaj by to nevedel. (Lenže on to vie.)

! Tvar were sa môže použiť vo všetkých osobách.


I wish I was younger. = I wish I were younger.

zapamätaj si

Želanie v prítomnosti sa vyjadruje minulým časom.


If only they weren't so busy.

Kiež by nemali toľko práce.



odkaz

Preštudujte si znovu kapitolu 8. Minulý čas na strane 54.



COULD

Could v želacích vetách vyjadruje, že splneniu želania bránia okolnosti.

If only she could go with us. (But she can't.)

Kiež by tak mohla ísť s nami. (No ona nemôže.)

WOULD

a) splnenie želania závisí od niečej vôle

I wish you would help me. (But you don't want to.)

Prial by som si, aby si mi pomohol. (No ty nechceš.)

b) situácia nás rozčuluje a prajeme si zmenu

If only it would stop raining.

Kiežby prestalo pršať.

V kladných želacích vetách v prítomnosti platí pravidlo o použití minulého času iba pre **stavové slovesá**, inak musíme použiť could, would alebo väzbu s hope.

If only he would help me. Kiež by mi pomohol.

I hope he will help me. Dúfam, že mi pomôže.

! Would sa nepoužíva v prvej osobe!

Cvičenie 29.1. Utvorte želacie vety.

- 1) I am sick.
I wish
- 2) Jim has to get up early.
Jack wishes
- 3) We aren't allowed to smoke in here.
If only
- 4) Lucy can't speak French.
If only
- 5) You are talking and talking, which makes me mad.
If only
- 6) They live in a big city, but they don't like it at all.
They wish
- 7) Jack knows it.
If only
- 8) Mr Smith can't do it.
If only
- 9) I don't think Sam will call me.
I wish
- 10) I can't move.
If only

Želacie vety

b) ŽELANIE V MINULOSTI

I WISH + PREDMINULÝ ČAS

IF ONLY + PREDMINULÝ ČAS

I wish I hadn't gone there. (But I went there.)


Bodaj by som tam bol nechodil. (No ja som tam išiel.)

If only we had studied more. (But we didn't.)

Kiežby sme sa boli viac učili. (No my sme sa neučili.)


zapamätaj si

Želanie v minulosti sa vyjadruje predminulým časom.
If only I had known it.
Kiežby som to bol vedel.



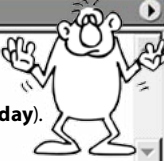
odkaz

Preštudujte si znovu kapitolu 10.
 Predminulý čas na strane 65.



vysvetlivka

If only **they were** there (**now**).
Bodaj by tam boli (teraz).
 If only **they had been** there (**yesterday**).
Bodaj by tam boli bývali (včera).



Cvičenie 29.2. Utvorte želacie vety.

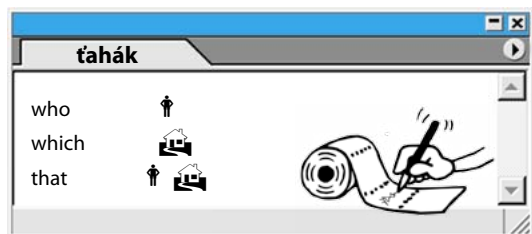
- 1) You didn't help me.
If only
- 2) They are still at work.
If only
- 3) He drank a lot last night.
He wishes
- 4) We left our luggage unattended.
If only
- 5) It is snowing and snowing.
If only
- 6) My wife is angry with me.
If only
- 7) They were late.
If only
- 8) I made him change his mind.
I wish
- 9) The car won't start again.
If only
- 10) It's a pity we weren't told about it in time.
If only

30. Vzťažné vety

a) OBMEDZOVACIE VZŤAŽNÉ VETY

Vyjadrujú vlastnosť osoby alebo predmetu, ktorá je pre ne podstatná, a preto nemožno tieto vzťažné vety vynechať. Neoddeľujú sa čiarkou.

Vzťažné zámená		
which	ktorý	zvieratá a veci
who	ktorý	osoby
whom	ktorý	osoby, po predložke
that	ktorý	zvieratá, veci, osoby, nepoužíva sa po predložke
whose	ktorého	zvieratá, veci, osoby
where	kde	
when	kedy	



The girl who/that lives next door is a nurse.

Dievča, ktoré býva vedľa, je zdravotná sestra.

The car which/that is standing in front of the house is not hers.

Auto, ktoré stojí pred domom, nie je jej.

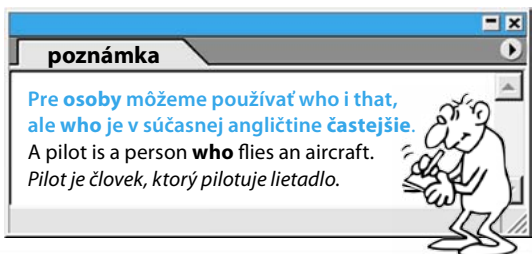
This is the town where we met last year.

To je to mesto, kde sme sa vlani stretli.

Po predložke môže byť who i whom.

This is the man with who(m) she lives.

To je ten muž, s ktorým žije.



Cvičenie 30.1. Utvorte súvetia. Použite who(m), which, that, whose.

- I met an interesting girl. I don't remember her phone number.
I met
- A man answered the phone. He didn't tell me his name.
The man
- Jane has a dog. Its name is Spotty.
Jane has
- Jack was born in a town. The town is small.
The town
- There is a boy standing in front of our house. He looks like my cousin Phil.
The boy
- Paul works in a factory. The factory produces tractors.
Paul
- Alexander Flemming was a scientist. He discovered penicillin.
Alexander Flemming
- A vacuum cleaner is a machine. It cleans carpets.
A
- I heard a song . I can't remember the words.
I heard
- A house was damaged by floods. It has just been rebuilt.
The house

Keď používame zámeno which a who(m) s predložkou, stojí predložka buď pred zámenom, alebo na konci vety. Zámeno that nemôžeme použiť po predložke.
This is the book about which we have just spoken.
This is the book which we have just spoken about.
This is the book that we have just spoken about.
Toto je tá kniha, o ktorej sme práve hovorili.

Vzťažné vety

Vynechanie vzťažného zámena

Keď je zámeno vo vete predmetom, môže sa vynechať.
This is the book (that/which) we have just spoken about.
(predmet – 6. pád)

Toto je tá kniha, o ktorej sme práve hovorili.

– **ale** –

The book which/that was on table wasn't mine.

(podmet – 1. pád)

Kniha, ktorá bola na stole, nebola moja.

Cvičenie 30.2. *Utvorte súvetia so vzťažnými vetami. Keď je to možné, vynechajte vzťažné zámená.*

- Suzi was wearing a miniskirt. It was bright pink.
The miniskirt
- He is reading a book. It is a novel.
The book
- I meet people in my job. They are strange.
The people
- We had dinner in a restaurant. What is its name?
What is
- Jane was on holiday with some people. They were her colleagues.
The people
- There is a boy waiting for you. Do you know him?
Do you know the
- Mr Harris finally got the job. He was trained for it.
Mr Harris
- You lost a key last night. Have you found it?
Have you
- I bought a bottle of Irish whiskey a week ago. Where is it?
Where is
- John is going out with a beautiful girl. She used to be my wife.
The beautiful girl

b) OPISNÉ VZŤAŽNÉ VETY

Vyjadrujú nezávažnú okolnosť o osobe alebo veci, ktorá nie je pre zmysel celého súvetia dôležitá, a preto ju môžeme vynechať.

Oddelujú sa čiarkou.


Nemožno vynechať zámená.

Nemožno použiť that.

Vzťažné zámená		
which	<i>ktorý</i>	zvieratá a veci
who	<i>ktorý</i>	osoby
whom	<i>ktorý</i>	osoby, po predložke
whose	<i>ktorého</i>	zvieratá, veci, osoby
where	<i>kde</i>	
when	<i>kedy</i>	

zaujímavosť

That sa nemôže použiť po čiarku a po predložke!



London, **which** is on the River Thames, is the capital of the UK.

Londýn, ktorý leží na Temži, je hlavným mestom UK.

Porovnajte dve nasledujúce vety.

My son, who is 30, is a doctor.

Môj syn, ktorý má 30 rokov, je lekár.

- mám iba jedného syna, informácia o jeho veku nie je dôležitá

My son who is 30 is a doctor.


Môj syn, ktorý má 30 rokov, je lekár.

- mám viac synov, informácia o veku je dôležitá pre určenie, o ktorého zo synov ide

vysvetlivka

Rozdiely medzi obmedzovacími a opisnými vetami.

<p>OBMEDZOVACIE</p> <p>nemožno ich vynechať možno použiť that možno vynechať zámená čiarky nie</p>	<p>OPISNÉ</p> <p>možno ich vynechať nemožno použiť that nemožno vynechať zámená čiarky áno</p>
---	---



Cvičenie 30.3. Utvorte súvetia obsahujúce vzťažné vety.
Ak treba, oddelte ich čiarkami. Ak je to možné, vynechajte zámená.


- 1) Paris is the capital of France. It lies on the River Seine.
Paris
- 2) Claire White lives on the same floor as me. She is an interpreter.
Claire White
- 3) A woman lives on the same floor as me. She never goes out.
The woman
- 4) My dad is looking for glasses. They are lying on the table.
The sunglasses
- 5) Jeremy Smith is Sophia's friend. He is a lawyer.
Jeremy Smith
- 6) We looked up the Moon. It was bright that night.
We
- 7) Jim is talking to a girl. Have you seen her before?
Have you?
- 8) We were in the Brave Lion Pub. Ben recommended it to us.
We
- 9) We asked a policeman for help. He was standing nearby.
We
- 10) The Prime Minister was shot down. He was only 50.
The Prime Minister

c) WHICH ČO

Which sa vzťahuje na celú hlavnú vetu.
Vždy sa oddeľuje čiarkou.
He gave me no chance, **which** was unfair.
Nedal mi nijakú šancu, **čo** nebolo fér.

zapamätaj si

Which sa vzťahuje na celú vetu.
Vždy je pred ním čiarka.
He is too old, which is a pity.
Je príliš starý, čo je škoda.




d) WHAT TO, ČO

I didn't understand what he said.
Nerozumel som tomu, čo povedal.

poznámka

what = something that, all that, the thing that
Did you hear **all (that)** he said?
Počul si všetko, čo hovoril?
Did you hear **what** he said?
Počul si, čo hovoril?



Cvičenie 30.4. Utvorte súvetia so vzťažnými vetami.
Použite **what** alebo **which**.

- 1) They couldn't go with us. It was a pity.
They
- 2) He said something. I didn't catch it.
I
- 3) The sun was shining all day long. We didn't expect it.
The sun
- 4) Judith passed the exam. It surprised me.
Judith
- 5) The boys want something. Give it to them.
Give the boys
- 6) He says he is busy. It means he is going to stay at work overnight.
He says

Vzťažné vety

- 7) You did it. It was right.
.....you did
- 8) James helped me. It was nice of him.
James
- 9) It happened last week. You are not responsible for it.
You are not
- 10) What are we living for? Does anybody know it?
Does anybody?

e) OSTATNÉ VZŤAŽNÉ VETY

both of which, whom	<i>obaja z nich</i>
all of which, whom	<i>všetci z nich</i>
few of which, whom	<i>málo z nich</i>
a few of which, whom	<i>niekoľko z nich</i>
most of which, whom	<i>väčšina z nich</i>
neither of which, whom	<i>ani jeden z nich (z dvoch)</i>
none of which, whom	<i>nijaký z nich</i>
each of which, whom	<i>každý z nich</i>
two of which, whom	<i>dvaja z nich</i>

Lucy has got four brothers, none of whom is married.

Lucia má štyroch bratov, nijaký z nich nie je ženatý.

There are five cars in front of our garage, three of which are ours.

Pred našou garážou je päť áut, tri z nich sú naše.

Cvičenie 30.5. *Utvorte súvetia so vzťažnými vetami. Použite of + which alebo whom.*

- 1) I have three daughters. All of them are students.
I have
- 2) Peter wrote two letters. He didn't post them.
Peter
- 3) Jill inherited one million dollars. She gave half of it to charity.
Jill
- 4) Ten students took the exam. No-one passed.
Ten students
- 5) There are several cars at the crossroads. No car is faster than mine.
There are

31. Účelové vety

a) Kladné vety s rovnakým podmetom

- 1) Vedľajšie vety účelové kladné sa často nahrádzajú **účelovým infinitívom**.

She went to the bank **to get** some money.

Išla do banky vybrať nejaké peniaze.

He takes yoga lessons **to keep** fit.

Chodí na jogu, aby sa udržal v kondícii.


Na začiatku vety sa môže infinitív zosilniť väzbou **in order to**.

In order to do it well we have to be very patient.

Musíme byť veľmi trpezliví, aby sme to urobili správne.

ťahák

Účelový infinitív sa používa pri kladných vetách s rovnakým podmetom.
Why were you in England?
Prečo si bol v Anglicku?
I was in England **to learn** English.
Bol som v Anglicku, aby som sa učil po anglicky.



Cvičenie 31.1. Odpovedajte na otázky.

- 1) Why did you go to the hairdresser? HAVE A NEW HAIRCUT
I went
- 2) Why was she on holiday in Greece? RELAX
She
- 3) Why are you waiting here? TALK TO TOM
We
- 4) Why does he smoke? CALM DOWN
He
- 5) Why are they going to Stockholm? PRACTISE THEIR SWEDISH
They

- 6) Why is John saving money? BUY A MOTORBIKE
John
- 7) Why do you take karate lessons? DEFEND MYSELF
I
- 8) Why did Jane put on a sweater? KEEP WARM
Jane
- 9) Why does Kevin go to so many parties? FIND A GIRLFRIEND
Kevin
- 10) Why are you wearing these glasses? SEE YOU
I

- 2) S modálnymi slovesami používame väzbu **so that**.

She put on glasses **so that she could** see it.

Nasadila si okuliare, aby to videla.

You must learn English **so that you can** study at Oxford.

Musíš sa učiť po anglicky, aby si mohol študovať v Oxforde.

V predprítomnom, prítomnom a budúcom čase nasleduje sloveso **can, will**.

V minulom a predminulom čase nasleduje sloveso **could, would**

b) Záporné vety s rovnakým podmetom

- 1) Používame väzbu **so as not to**. Bez tejto väzby sa nemôže použiť infinitív.

He took a taxi **so as not to be** late.

Vzal si taxík, aby neprišiel neskoro.

- 2) S modálnymi slovesami používame väzbu **so that**.

We booked a table in a restaurant **so that we wouldn't have** to wait.

Rezervovali sme stôl v reštaurácii, aby sme nemuseli čakať.

Účelové vety

They must hurry **so that they won't be** late.

Musia sa ponáhľať, aby neprišli neskoro.

V predprítomnom, prítomnom a budúcom čase nasleduje sloveso **can't, won't**.

V minulom a predminulom čase nasleduje sloveso **couldn't, wouldn't**.

c) Kladné a záporné vety s nerovnakým podmetom

Vedľajšie vety účelové, ktoré majú podmet odlišný od podmetu hlavnej vety, sú s hlavnou vetou spojené výrazom **so that**.

We turned the radio down **so that the baby could sleep**.

Stíšili sme rádio, aby dieťa mohlo spať.

I wrote him a letter **so that he would know** why I had done it.

Napísal som mu list, aby vedel, prečo som to urobil.

V predprítomnom, prítomnom a budúcom čase nasleduje sloveso **will, can, won't, can't**.

V minulom a predminulom čase a v kondicionále nasleduje sloveso **would, could, wouldn't, couldn't**.

ťahák

Väzba **so that** + modálne sloveso sa používa pri záporných vetách s rovnakým podmetom a pri vetách s rozličnými podmetmi.

She came nearer **so that she could see** it better.

Prišla bližšie, aby to lepšie videla.

I cut it myself **so that he wouldn't hurt** his finger.

Nakrájal som to sám, aby sa neporezal.

Cvičenie 31.2. Utvorte súvetia s účelovými vetami. Použite väzbu **so that**.

- 1) He wants to read books in French, but he can't. That is why he is learning French.
He is learning

- 2) I wanted to paint the door red, but I couldn't. I didn't have the red paint.
I bought the red
- 3) They hid behind the tree. They didn't want anybody to see them.
They hid
- 4) We can't travel round the world this summer. We are saving money. We want to travel round the world next summer.
We are
- 5) He is whispering, because he doesn't want to wake up the baby.
He
- 6) The guide spoke slowly and clearly. She wanted everybody to understand.
The guide
- 7) I can't use my hairdryer. Will you have a look at it?
Will
- 8) Jim couldn't drive a car. He took extra driving lessons.
Jim
- 9) Lucas lent me his glasses, because I couldn't read the message.
Lucas
- 10) Mel put on a strange coat. She didn't want anybody to recognise her.
Mel

Aj vety s nerovnakým podmetom sa môžu krátiť infinitívom.

for + predmet + infinitív

I have brought it for you to read it.

Priniesol som ti to, aby si si to prečítal.

32. Súslednosť časov

Súslednosť časov je závislosť tvaru slovesa v predmetovej vete od tvaru slovesa v hlavnej vete, či je v čase minulom, predminulom, alebo v podmienovacom spôsobe.

Najčastejším prípadom časovej súslednosti je nepriama reč.

POSUN ČASOV

Priama reč	→	Nepriama reč
PRÍTOMNÝ JEDNODUCHÝ	→	MINULÝ JEDNODUCHÝ
PRÍTOMNÝ PRIEBEHOVÝ	→	MINULÝ PRIEBEHOVÝ
PREDPRÍTOMNÝ JEDNODUCHÝ	→	PREDMINULÝ JEDNODUCHÝ
PREDPRÍTOMNÝ PRIEBEHOVÝ	→	PREDMINULÝ PRIEBEHOVÝ
MINULÝ JEDNODUCHÝ	→	PREDMINULÝ JEDNODUCHÝ
MINULÝ PRIEBEHOVÝ	→	PREDMINULÝ PRIEBEHOVÝ
WILL	→	WOULD
WOULD	→	WOULD HAVE
CAN	→	COULD
MAY	→	MIGHT
MUST	→	HAD TO

Priama reč	Nepriama reč
"I am at home."	He said (that) he was at home.
"I often eat out."	She said (that) she often ate out.
"He is writing letters."	She said (that) he was writing letters.
"They have bought a new car."	I said (that) they had bought a new car.
"We have been waiting for an hour."	They told us (that) they had been waiting for an hour.
"I went to work by bus."	She said (that) she had gone to work by bus.
"She was having a bath."	He said (that) she had been having a bath.
"He will do it for you."	She told me (that) he would do it for me.
"I would do the same."	He said (that) he would have done the same.


Priama reč	Nepriama reč
"I can help ."	She said (that) she could help .
"We may come ."	They said (that) they might come .
"We must get up early ."	They said (that) they had to get up early .

ťahák

PRIAMA REČ

am, is → was
are → were
go → went
have gone → had gone
went → had gone
will → would
can → could
may → might
must → had to

NEPRIAMA REČ



Cvičenie 32.1. Utvorte nepriamu reč.

- "They are still standing there."
Jack told us (that) they
- "Mr Knight left his wife."
Fiona said (that)
- "I have never seen it before."
Julia told me (that)
- "The Smiths will go on holiday without their children."
Peter asked the Parkers if
- "She is going to travel after she finishes school."
She said (that)
- "We are leaving on Tuesday."
They informed us (that)
- "If we see him, we will tell him about it."
They promised (that)

Súslednosť časov

- 8) "I don't smoke any more."
She told him (that)
- 9) "We will be there on time."
They said (that)
- 10) "I have almost finished it."
He informed them (that)
- 11) "Kim has never been to Japan."
Kim told me (that)
- 12) "I am sure he will be late again."
She said (that)
- 13) "We have been learning English for ages."
They said (that)
- 14) "It will be better."
They hoped (that)
- 15) "She may come with us."
They told us

Zmena niektorých výrazov

today	→	that day
tonight	→	that night
tomorrow	→	the next day, the following day
yesterday	→	the day before, the previous day
last week	→	the week before, the previous week
ago	→	before
this	→	that
these	→	those
here	→	there
now	→	then, at that time
next week	→	the next week, the following week
come	→	go

"I will do it today." „Urobím to dnes.“

He said (that) he would do it **that day**. Povedal, že to urobí v ten deň.

He said (that) he would do it **today**. Povedal, že to urobí dnes.

zapamätaj si

now	→	then, at that time
today	→	that day
tomorrow	→	the next day, the following day
yesterday	→	the day before, the previous day
this	→	that
these	→	those
next	→	the next

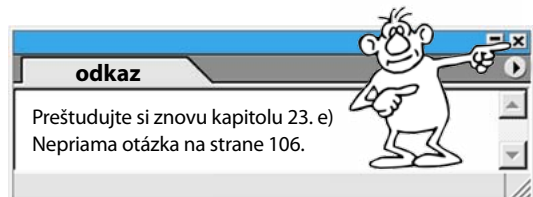


Cvičenie 32.2. Utvorte nepriamu reč. Vymeňte tučné vytlačené výrazy.

- 1) „I don't know **this** girl!“
Jim said (that)
- 2) "We will do it **tomorrow**."
They promised (that)
- 3) "I lost my passport **yesterday**."
Hannah told me (that)
- 4) "We don't like **these** buildings."
They said (that)
- 5) "I am working **today**."
He told his wife (that)
- 6) "It's **here**."
He told me (that)
- 7) "They will arrive **next week**."
They informed their friends (that)
- 8) "I will wait **here** until you ask me to leave."
I told them (that)
- 9) "We weren't there **last week**, we were there **three weeks ago**."
They said (that)
- 10) "We are going to the disco **tonight**."
The children told their parents (that)

NEPRIAMA OTÁZKA

Pravidlá o časovej súslednosti platia aj pri nepriamych otázkach. Pozri kapitolu 23. e) Nepriama otázka na strane 106.



"Are you leaving on Monday or on Tuesday?"
She asked him if he **was leaving** on Monday or on Tuesday?
"Did he bring it?"
They asked me if **he had brought** it.

Cvičenie 32.3. Utvorte nepriame otázky.

- 1) "Where did you meet your husband?"
John asked me
- 2) "Why are they leaving?"
I didn't want to ask them
- 3) "What are you going to do about it?"
The question was
- 4) "Can he speak Spanish?"
No-one knew if
- 5) "Has Jane ever said anything interesting?"
He doubted if
- 6) "Are you interested in classical music?"
The woman asked the man
- 7) "Does Lucas go to work by car?"
They asked Lucas
- 8) "Do you like horror films?"
She asked him
- 9) "When will you be back?"
They wanted to know

- 10) "Were they on holiday in Spain or in Greece?"
Their colleagues asked them

PRÁVIDLÁ O ČASOVEJ SÚSLEDNOSTI NEPLATIA

a) pri všeobecne platných tvrdeniach

"The sun rises in the east."
The boy didn't know (that) the sun rises in the east.

b) ak je uvedený presný čas v minulosti

All students knew (that) the war broke out in 1939.

c) should sa nemení

d) must sa mení podľa významu

Must sa nemení pri trvalom príkaze, respektíve zákaze (mustn't).

"You mustn't smoke here."
They said (that) we mustn't smoke there.
Povedali, že tam nesmieme fajčiť.

– ale –

He said (that) he had to do it quickly.
Povedal, že to musí urobiť rýchlo.

e) pri zdvorilých žiadostiach sa prítomný kondicionál nemení

"Would you help me?"
Pomohol by si mi?
I asked him if he would help me.
Opýtal som sa ho, či by mi pomohol.

f) podmienkové vety typu 2 a 3 sa nemenia

"If I knew it, I wouldn't ask."
He said (that) if he knew it, he wouldn't ask.

Test 10

- 1) If he her, he will give it to her.
A) will see B) see C) sees D) saw
- 2) If only we there with you last night.
A) were B) have been C) are D) had been

Súslednosť časov

- 3) He gave me no information didn't surprise me at all.
A) , what B) , which C) , that D) that
- 4) I will lend you my glasses it.
A) so that you can read B) in order to read
C) so that you could read D) so that you read it
- 5) Did you understand why they to Italy by bus, not by plane?
A) go B) have gone C) are going D) had gone
- 6) They won't come unless you them.
A) invite B) will invite
C) don't invite D) won't invite
- 7) It's raining and raining. If only it
A) stop B) stopped
C) will stop D) would stop
- 8) Did you understand he said?
A) all what B) what C) that D) which
- 9) Jane sent me an email the date of her arrival.
A) so that let me know B) so let me know
C) to let me know D) let me know
- 10) The man at the station asked me
A) what time is it B) what time it is
C) what time was it D) what time it was
- 11) If they me yesterday, they would know it.
A) contact B) have contacted
C) contacted D) had contacted
- 12) Julia will be jogging while her boyfriend lunch.
A) will be preparing B) is preparing
C) prepare D) will prepare
- 13) He is so unreliable. If only he
A) isn't B) doesn't C) wasn't D) didn't
- 14) The cinema has been knocked down.
A) in which we first met B) which we first met
C) we met first D) in that we first met
- 15) We asked the hotel service to wake us up
A) not to oversleep
B) so that we can't oversleep
C) to not oversleep
D) so that we wouldn't oversleep
- 16) Paul told me he sushi before.
A) has never eaten B) had never eaten
C) didn't ever eat D) doesn't eat
- 17) If he, I won't wait.
A) was late B) is late
C) will be late D) would be late
- 18) I can't speak French. I wish I
A) would B) will C) could D) can
- 19) Jim is jogging fit.
A) so that to keep B) to keep
C) so that he would keep D) to have kept
- 20) They told us they do it for us if we them.
A) will, ask B) would, ask
C) will, asked D) would, asked

Príloha

NEPRAVIDELNÉ SLOVESÁ

Infinitív	Minulý čas	Príčasie min.	Po slovensky
be	was, were	been	byť
beat	beat	beaten	biť, tĺcť
become	became	become	stať sa
begin	began	begun	začať
bend	bent	bent	ohnúť
bet	bet	bet	staviť sa (tipovať)
bite	bit	bitten	hrýzť
blow	blew	blown	fúkať
break	broke	broken	zlomiť
bring	brought	brought	priniesť
build	built	built	postaviť
buy	bought	bought	kúpiť
catch	caught	caught	chytať
choose	chose	chosen	vybrať si
come	came	come	prísť
cost	cost	cost	stáť (mať cenu)
cut	cut	cut	rezať, strihať
do	did	done	robiť
draw	drew	drawn	ťaháť, kresliť
drink	drank	drunk	piť
drive	drove	driven	viest (auto), šoférovať
eat	ate	eaten	jesť
fall	fell	fallen	paдаť
feed	fed	fed	kŕmiť
feel	felt	felt	cítiť sa
fight	fought	fought	bojovať
find	found	found	nájsť
fly	flew	flown	lietať
forget	forgot	forgotten	zabudnúť
forgive	forgave	forgiven	odpustiť
freeze	froze	frozen	mrznúť
get	got	got	dostať
give	gave	given	dať
go	went	gone	ísť
grow	grew	grown	rásť, pestovať
have	had	had	mať

Infinitív	Minulý čas	Príčasie min.	Po slovensky
hear	heard	heard	počuť
hide	hid	hidden	skrýť sa
hit	hit	hit	zasiahnuť
hold	held	held	držať
hurt	hurt	hurt	zraniť
keep	kept	kept	držať
kneel	knelt	knelt	kľačať
know	knew	known	vedieť
lay	laid	laid	položiť
lead	led	led	viest
learn	learnt	learnt	učiť sa
leave	left	left	opustiť, nechať
lend	lent	lent	požičať
let	let	let	nechať
lie	lay	lain	ležať
lose	lost	lost	stratiť
make	made	made	robiť
mean	meant	meant	znamenáť
meet	met	met	stretnúť (sa)
pay	paid	paid	platiť
put	put	put	položiť
read	read	read	čítať
ride	rode	ridden	jazdiť
ring	rang	rung	zvoniť
rise	rose	risen	povstať
run	ran	run	behať
say	said	said	povedať
see	saw	seen	vidieť
sell	sold	sold	predať
send	sent	sent	poslať
set	set	set	umiestniť
sew	sewed	sewn	šiť
shine	shone	shone	svietiť
shoot	shot	shot	strielať
shut	shut	shut	zavrieť
sing	sang	sung	spievať
sit	sat	sat	sedieť
sleep	slept	slept	spať
speak	spoke	spoken	hovoriť

Príloha

Infinitív	Minulý čas	Príčastie min.	Po slovensky
spend	spent	spent	stráviť, minúť
stand	stood	stood	stáť
steal	stole	stolen	kradnúť
swim	swam	swum	plávať
take	took	taken	vziať
teach	taught	taught	učiť
tell	told	told	povedať
think	thought	thought	myslieť
throw	threw	thrown	hádzať
understand	understood	understood	rozumieť
wake	woke	woken	zobudieť
wear	wore	worn	nosiť na sebe
win	won	won	vyhrať
write	wrote	written	písať

Klíč

1.1.

♂	♀
boyfriend	girlfriend
lion	lioness
hero	heroine
emperor	empress
uncle	aunt
waiter	waitress
actor	actress
tsar	tsarina
duke	duchess
headmaster	headmistress

1.2.

Jednotné číslo	Množné číslo
loaf	loaves
tomato	tomatoes
sheep	sheep
disco	discos
watch	watches
boy	boys
family	families
roof	roofs
means	means
grandchild	grandchildren
Englishman	Englishmen
foot	feet
hero	heroes
medium	media
aircraft	aircraft
leaf	leaves
ox	oxen
woman	women
crossroads	crossroads
life	lives
kiss	kisses
series	series
goose	geese
chief	chiefs
box	boxes

1.3.

- | | | |
|--------|---------|---------|
| 1) are | 6) is | 11) are |
| 2) is | 7) are | 12) is |
| 3) are | 8) is | 13) are |
| 4) is | 9) is | 14) are |
| 5) are | 10) are | 15) is |

1.4.

Počítatelné

flower
bottle
slice
loaf
piano
radio
suitcase
bag
newspaper
item

Nepočítatelné

importance
flour
money
wine
water
bread
cheese
music
luggage
news

1.5.

- 1) E) 2) D) 3) B) 4) A) 5) C)

1.6.

- | | |
|---------|----------|
| 1) an | 6) some |
| 2) some | 7) a |
| 3) some | 8) a |
| 4) a | 9) some |
| 5) some | 10) some |

1.7.

- | | |
|----------------------------|------------------------|
| 1) Paul's grandfather | 9) director's office |
| 2) girl's name | 10) women's rights |
| 3) Tom and Jenny's wedding | 11) at grandfather's |
| 4) tomorrow's newspaper | 12) five minutes' walk |
| 5) my brother's room | 13) my sisters' room |
| 6) children's books | 14) parents' bedroom |
| 7) Mr Brown's son | 15) men's clothes |
| 8) world's population | |

1.8.

- | | | |
|----------------|------------|------------|
| 1) a, a | 11) a, a | 21) the |
| 2) the, the | 12) -, - | 22) the |
| 3) a, the, the | 13) The | 23) -, - |
| 4) the | 14) -, a | 24) the |
| 5) The, - | 15) the | 25) the |
| 6) the | 16) the | 26) -, - |
| 7) - | 17) -, a | 27) The |
| 8) - | 18) the, a | 28) the |
| 9) The, the | 19) a, the | 29) a, the |
| 10) the, the | 20) the | 30) a, the |

1.9.

- | | |
|------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1) the United Kingdom | 16) the English Channel |
| 2) the Sahara Desert | 17) the Netherlands |
| 3) Lake Ontario | 18) Etna |
| 4) Buckingham Palace | 19) the Canary Islands |
| 5) Oxford Street | 20) the Brave Lion Pub |
| 6) the Indian Ocean | 21) the Rocky Mountains |
| 7) the Swiss Alps | 22) the Tower |
| 8) the Danube | 23) Lloyds Bank |
| 9) the USA | 24) the Middle East |
| 10) Heathrow | 25) the Conservative party |
| 11) the Guardian | 26) the UN |
| 12) Europe | 27) Northern America |
| 13) Westminster Abbey | 28) the Bank of England |
| 14) the Houses of Parliament | 29) the Mediterranean |
| 15) the National Theatre | 30) Trafalgar Square |

TEST 1

- | | | | | |
|-------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| 1) B) | 6) D) | 11) D) | 16) B) | 21) D) |
| 2) C) | 7) C) | 12) B) | 17) C) | 22) D) |
| 3) D) | 8) A) | 13) A) | 18) B) | 23) A) |
| 4) C) | 9) C) | 14) A) | 19) C) | 24) D) |
| 5) A) | 10) A) | 15) C) | 20) D) | 25) B) |

2.1.

ADJECTIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
big	bigger	the biggest
large	larger	the largest
lazy	lazier	the laziest
crowded	more crowded	the most crowded
busy	busier	the busiest
far	farther/further	the farthest/the furthest
sad	sadder	the saddest
fat	fatter	the fattest
amusing	more amusing	the most amusing
little	less	the least
bad	worse	the worst
lucky	luckier	the luckiest
contented	more contented	the most contented
lovely	lovelier	the loveliest
easy	easier	the easiest
thin	thinner	the thinnest
good	better	the best
dangerous	more dangerous	the most dangerous
safe	safer	the safest
advanced	more advanced	the most advanced
hot	hotter	the hottest
often	more often	the most often
wide	wider	the widest
narrow	narrower	the narrowest

tiring	more tiring	the most tiring
funny	funnier	the funniest
slow	slower	the slowest
interesting	more interesting	the most interesting
near	nearer	the nearest
wet	wetter	the wettest

2.2.

- 1) Jim is older than Paul.
- 2) Fiona isn't as tall as/so Suzy.
- 3) Are you as good at English as/so your brother?
- 4) I don't have as/so many as friends you.
- 5) Jeremy is younger than his wife.
- 6) A cheetah is faster than a lion.
- 7) Was it as bad as you expected?
- 8) Can Paul play squash as well as Charles?
- 9) We are as busy as last year.
- 10) This house is more expensive than that one.

2.3.

- 1) It was much/far/a lot worse than we expected.
- 2) What is the latest news?
- 3) My brother is a little/a bit/a little bit slimmer than my sister.
- 4) You are as good a singer as your father.
- 5) The longer you talk, the less we understand.
- 6) The sooner, the better.
- 7) It is by far the best joke I have ever heard.
- 8) Our new car is much/far/a lot faster but less comfortable.
- 9) Are you really as good a goalkeeper as they say?
- 10) Don't be as silly as her./she is.

2.4.

- | | | | |
|---------|----------|-----------|----------|
| 1) of | 6) of | 11) of | 16) of |
| 2) of | 7) of | 12) for | 17) with |
| 3) with | 8) of | 13) with | 18) of |
| 4) of | 9) about | 14) with | 19) to |
| 5) to | 10) at | 15) about | 20) to |

2.5.

- 1) a new black sports car
- 2) an interesting old French book
- 3) a big green plastic bag
- 4) a small white china cup
- 5) an old Japanese writing desk
- 6) an antique Swiss wooden clock
- 7) a modern rectangular glass table
- 8) a funny big yellow umbrella
- 9) an interesting tall young man
- 10) long curly dark hair

2.6.

- | | |
|---------------|------------------|
| 1) surprising | 6) amazing |
| 2) confused | 7) tired |
| 3) excited | 8) disappointing |
| 4) disgusting | 9) bored |
| 5) interested | 10) confusing |

TEST 2

- | | | | |
|-------|--------|--------|--------|
| 1) C) | 6) D) | 11) D) | 16) B) |
| 2) D) | 7) C) | 12) A) | 17) C) |
| 3) B) | 8) B) | 13) A) | 18) B) |
| 4) A) | 9) A) | 14) B) | 19) D) |
| 5) C) | 10) D) | 15) D) | 20) A) |

3.1.

- | | |
|-----------|----------|
| 1) her | 6) his |
| 2) theirs | 7) its |
| 3) them | 8) mine |
| 4) us | 9) yours |
| 5) our | 10) ours |

3.2.

- 1) I saw a friend of yours last night.
- 2) Jim took a pen of mine by mistake.
- 3) A fan of theirs called them a week ago.
- 4) We were there with three friends of ours.
- 5) Lucas is having dinner with a girlfriend of his.

3.3.

- 1) Do you like these houses?
- 2) Are those books yours?
- 3) Excuse me, are these your suitcases?
- 4) These men are weird.
- 5) Those girls are my best friends.

3.4.

I	myself
you	yourself
he	himself
she	herself

it	itself
we	ourselves
you	yourselves
they	themselves

3.5.

- | | |
|---------------|---------------|
| 1) each other | 6) each other |
| 2) yourself | 7) yourself |
| 3) yourselves | 8) each other |
| 4) herself | 9) – |
| 5) – | 10) itself |

3.6.

- | | |
|----------|----------|
| 1) Which | 6) What |
| 2) What | 7) Who |
| 3) Which | 8) What |
| 4) What | 9) Who |
| 5) Whose | 10) What |

3.7.

- | | |
|-------------|---------------------|
| 1) anything | 6) nothing |
| 2) some | 7) nobody/no-one |
| 3) any | 8) somebody/someone |
| 4) any | 9) somewhere |
| 5) Anything | 10) no |

3.8.

- | | |
|------------|-----------|
| 1) both | 6) ones |
| 2) neither | 7) Either |
| 3) all | 8) none |
| 4) every | 9) one |
| 5) else | 10) Each |

3.9.

- 1) another
- 2) the other
- 3) others
- 4) other
- 5) the others

3.10.

- | | |
|-------------|--------------|
| 1) much | 6) much |
| 2) little | 7) little |
| 3) a little | 8) a few |
| 4) many | 9) few |
| 5) a few | 10) a little |

TEST 3

- | | | | |
|-------|--------|--------|--------|
| 1) C) | 6) A) | 11) C) | 16) B) |
| 2) B) | 7) C) | 12) A) | 17) C) |
| 3) D) | 8) B) | 13) D) | 18) A) |
| 4) A) | 9) B) | 14) A) | 19) C) |
| 5) C) | 10) A) | 15) C) | 20) B) |

4.1.

- 1) thirteen
- 2) thirty
- 3) seventy-eight
- 4) ninety-eight
- 5) fifteen
- 6) fifty-one
- 7) forty-three
- 8) eight hundred and ninety-seven
- 9) six thousand two hundred and fifty-nine

Kľúč

- 10) eight million nine hundred thousand eight hundred and twenty
- 11) twelve
- 12) twenty
- 13) one hundred and twenty-nine
- 14) two point five eight
- 15) seven million two hundred and sixteen

4.2.

- | | |
|----------------------|------|
| 1) the first | 1st |
| 2) the twelfth | 12th |
| 3) the fifth | 5th |
| 4) the fortieth | 40th |
| 5) the fifty-fourth | 54th |
| 6) the thirty-ninth | 39th |
| 7) the seventy-third | 73rd |
| 8) the twenty-second | 22nd |
| 9) the fifty-first | 51st |
| 10) the second | 2nd |

4.3.

- | | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|--------|
| 1) B) | 2) I) | 3) E) | 4) H) | 5) C) |
| 6) A) | 7) F) | 8) G) | 9) J) | 10) D) |

4.4.

- 1) the twenty-sixth of May two thousand (and) five
- 2) the seventeenth of November nineteen-eighty-nine
- 3) the fourth of July seventeen-seventy-six
- 4) the fifteenth of March nineteen-thirty-nine
- 5) fifteen (hundred) thirty-four
- 6) sixteen (hundred) twenty
- 7) fifty-five Before Christ
- 8) forty-three Anno Domini
- 9) ten (hundred) sixty-six
- 10) the third of June nineteen-ninety-eight

4.5.

- 1) ninety per cent
- 2) six plus twelve equals (is) eighteen
- 3) five multiplied by six equals (is) thirty
- 4) thirty-five divided by seven equals (is) five
- 5) the square root of sixteen equals (is) four
- 6) five squared equals (is) twenty-five

5.1.

- | | |
|-------------------|------------|
| 1) Did | 6) didn't |
| 2) was/is/will be | 7) was |
| 3) does/did | 8) has |
| 4) Have | 9) weren't |
| 5) were | 10) are |

5.2.

- 1) Jim **has** never smoked a cigar.
- 2) We didn't **do** it last week, we did it the week before.
- 3) The girls **don't** wear skirts to school.
- 4) It **was** said at the meeting last Tuesday.
- 5) I promise, I'll **be** there in time.

6.1.

- | | |
|------------------|-----------------|
| 1) be able to | 6) be able to |
| 2) could | 7) were able to |
| 3) can/could | 8) Can/Could |
| 4) to be able to | 9) be able to |
| 5) been able to | 10) can't |

6.2.

- | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| 1) been allowed to | 6) to be allowed to |
| 2) May | 7) may/might |
| 3) will be allowed to | 8) wasn't allowed to |
| 4) weren't allowed to | 9) may/might |
| 5) be allowed to | 10) May |

6.3.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|-------------------|
| 1) had to | 6) didn't have to |
| 2) will have to | 7) must |
| 3) had to | 8) have to |
| 4) must | 9) had to |
| 5) don't have to/won't have to | 10) have to |

6.4.

- | | |
|------------|------------------|
| 1) mustn't | 6) mustn't |
| 2) must | 7) must |
| 3) needn't | 8) needn't, must |
| 4) needn't | 9) mustn't |
| 5) mustn't | 10) needn't |

6.5.

- 1) Fiona must be still working.
- 2) They may/might have been sick.
- 3) He may/might not have seen her.
- 4) Jack must be hungry.
- 5) You must be joking.
- 6) It can't have been true.
- 7) You must have left your purse at home.
- 8) You can't be serious.
- 9) They may/might be waiting in another place.
- 10) He must have taken it by mistake.

6.6.

- | | |
|-------------------|--------------------|
| 1) Shall I lend | 6) Shall we go |
| 2) Shall I answer | 7) Shall I get |
| 3) Shall I help | 8) Shall I turn |
| 4) shall we meet | 9) shall we invite |
| 5) Shall I open | 10) shall I wear |

6.7.

- 1) He should be wearing a helmet.
- 2) They shouldn't have gone there without a guide.
They should have gone there with a guide.
- 3) She shouldn't have been late.
- 4) You should have gone to bed early last night.
- 5) I should have asked the way.
- 6) He shouldn't post it.

6.8.

- | | |
|--|-------------------------|
| 1) used to be slim./
/didn't use to be fat. | 6) used to walk |
| 2) didn't use to smoke | 7) used to meet |
| 3) used to go out | 8) used to listen |
| 4) used to live | 9) didn't use to travel |
| 5) used to have | 10) didn't use to wear |

6.9.

- | | |
|-------------|------------|
| 1) sleeping | 6) meeting |
| 2) drink | 7) go |
| 3) having | 8) walking |
| 4) live | 9) have |
| 5) eating | 10) living |

6.10.

- | | |
|-----------------------|---------------------|
| 1) 'd better leave | 6) 'd better put on |
| 2) 'd rather wait | 7) 'd better ask |
| 3) 'd rather stay | 8) 'd better study |
| 4) 'd better take | 9) 'd rather go |
| 5) 'd better not tell | 10) 'd better do |

TEST 4

- | | | | |
|-------|--------|--------|--------|
| 1) C) | 6) B) | 11) D) | 16) C) |
| 2) B) | 7) A) | 12) A) | 17) B) |
| 3) D) | 8) C) | 13) B) | 18) D) |
| 4) D) | 9) B) | 14) A) | 19) B) |
| 5) A) | 10) A) | 15) D) | 20) C) |

7.1.

- | | | |
|------------|-------------|------------|
| 1) goes | 6) studies | 11) is |
| 2) watches | 7) does | 12) kisses |
| 3) carries | 8) finishes | 13) prays |
| 4) plays | 9) tries | 14) wishes |
| 5) flies | 10) has | 15) buys |

7.2.

- 1) ? Does he go to the theatre once a month?/How often does he go to the theatre?
- He doesn't go to the theatre once a month.
- 2) ? Do they live in the country?/Where do they live?
- They don't live in the country.
- 3) ? Does it often rain in England?/How often does it rain in England?
- It doesn't often rain in England.
- 4) ? Does Paul like tea with milk?/What does Paul like?
- Paul doesn't like tea with milk.
- 5) ? Do Jim and Bob watch TV in the evening?/When do Jim and Bob watch TV?
- Jim and Bob don't watch TV in the evening.

7.3.

- | | | |
|-------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1) sitting | 6) playing | 11) travelling |
| 2) studying | 7) getting | 12) stopping |
| 3) having | 8) forgetting | 13) coming |
| 4) skiing | 9) leaving | 14) carrying |
| 5) smoking | 10) living | 15) beginning |

7.4.

- 1) Why are Tom and Paola waiting in front of the house?
- 2) I don't understand what you mean.
- 3) What does Jane do on Saturdays?
- 4) How often does it snow in your country?
- 5) Are you still reading the book by Ian Mc Ewan?
- 6) What is happening?
- 7) Jamie doesn't play tennis with us.
- 8) When do the Smiths go to the mountains?
- 9) Does Robin want to go shopping with her?
- 10) I am not playing squash with Sarah tonight.

7.5.

- | | |
|------------------|-------------------------|
| 1) is shouting | 6) am flying |
| 2) isn't raining | 7) watch, are listening |
| 3) misses | 8) is making |
| 4) is missing | 9) is getting |
| 5) am having | 10) speaks |

8.1.

- | | | |
|------------|--------------|---------------|
| 1) dropped | 6) listened | 11) travelled |
| 2) studied | 7) preferred | 12) married |
| 3) changed | 8) loved | 13) asked |
| 4) knitted | 9) played | 14) was, were |
| 5) looked | 10) visited | 15) stayed |

Kľúč

8.2.

Po slovensky	Infinitív	Minulý čas	Príčastie minulé
byť	be	was, were	been
biť, ťlčiť	beat	beat	beaten
chytať	catch	caught	caught
mrznúť	freeze	froze	frozen
rozumieť	understand	understood	understood
padáť	fall	fell	fallen
plávať	swim	swam	swum
zvoniť	ring	rang	rung
cítiť sa	feel	felt	felt
hrýzť	bite	bit	bitten
vyhrať	win	won	won
ležať	lie	lay	lain
učiť	teach	taught	taught
prísť	come	came	come
viest (auto)	drive	drove	driven
platiť	pay	paid	paid
povedať	tell	told	told
vraviť	say	said	said
jesť	eat	ate	eaten
piť	drink	drank	drunk
povstať	rise	rose	risen
zasiahnuť	hit	hit	hit
držať	hold	held	held
stať sa	become	became	become
hádzasť	throw	threw	thrown
strielať	shoot	shot	shot
zobudiť	wake	woke	woken
fúkať	blow	blew	blown
vybrať si	choose	chose	chosen
stratiť	lose	lost	lost

8.3.

- 1) Who did Kim meet last night?
- 2) Where did they see the film?
- 3) What did Jim put on the desk?
- 4) Why did Jessica shut the window?
- 5) When/What time did Charles wake up yesterday?
- 6) How many melons did you buy?
- 7) What did they play in the morning?
- 8) Where did you find the glasses?
- 9) What did she make?
- 10) Why did they do it?

8.4.

- 1) They didn't choose the red ball.
- 2) She didn't lend me the book.
- 3) Ruth didn't do the homework at school.
- 4) Peter didn't write me a letter.
- 5) I didn't feel tired.
- 6) John didn't sleep well last night.

- 7) We didn't want to meet them at the party.
- 8) Vicky didn't drink only beer.
- 9) We didn't understand why they did it.
- 10) She didn't get lost.

8.5.

- 1) I was washing up while my husband was reading a newspaper./I was reading a newspaper while my husband was washing up.
- 2) What were you doing at 7?
- 3) Was it raining when he arrived?
- 4) Dorothy wasn't wearing a dress yesterday.
- 5) We were having dinner when you phoned.

8.6.

- 1) was shining, arrived
- 2) was waiting, started
- 3) met, was wearing
- 4) happened, were driving
- 5) broke, was skiing
- 6) were doing, saw
- 7) were playing, hit
- 8) were listening, fell
- 9) was having
- 10) were driving, stopped

TEST 5

- 1) D)
- 2) B)
- 3) A)
- 4) D)
- 5) A)
- 6) B)
- 7) C)
- 8) B)
- 9) C)
- 10) D)
- 11) B)
- 12) A)
- 13) B)
- 14) B)
- 15) C)
- 16) C)
- 17) C)
- 18) A)
- 19) A)
- 20) B)

9.1.

- 1) seen
- 2) waited
- 3) had
- 4) lost
- 5) brought
- 6) broken
- 7) hit
- 8) sung
- 9) thought
- 10) eaten
- 11) spoken
- 12) sold
- 13) fallen
- 14) felt
- 15) done
- 16) gone
- 17) bought
- 18) known
- 19) got
- 20) kept
- 21) stopped
- 22) given
- 23) risen
- 24) fought
- 25) hidden
- 26) woken
- 27) hurt
- 28) stolen
- 29) written
- 30) chosen

9.2.

- 1) has cleaned
- 2) has painted
- 3) have gone
- 4) has stopped
- 5) has broken
- 6) have bought
- 7) have lost
- 8) has left
- 9) has left
- 10) have told

9.3.

- 1) have known
- 2) have
- 3) haven't seen
- 4) met, have been
- 5) have you had
- 6) has ('s) happened, broke
- 7) wrote
- 8) hasn't arrived

- 9) did it happen 13) have never been to,
10) has never smoked were in
11) Have you ever eaten 14) have spent
12) has been, returned 15) Is, has been

9.4.

- 1) has been raining, woke up
2) has been standing
3) Have you been waiting
4) has been crying, heard
5) Have you been running
6) has been doing, graduated
7) has been teaching
8) has Tom been going out
9) Are the children still sleeping
10) have been repairing

9.5.

- 1) has drunk 6) learnt
2) have just moved 7) have already read
3) have been working 8) have been sunbathing
4) has gone 9) have just bought
5) have you been learning 10) has drawn

10.1.

- 1) had already had 6) had been
2) had been invited 7) had gone
3) had broken into 8) had left
4) had already started 9) had just washed
5) hadn't flown/
/had never flown 10) hadn't seen/
/had never seen

10.2.

- 1) had been working, retired
2) had been raining, arrived
3) had been playing, started
4) was, had been working
5) had, had been driving
6) got, had been waiting
7) had been speaking, realised
8) had been listening, realised, had heard
9) had been sleeping, came
10) had never smoked, smoked

11.1.

- 1) will be skiing 7) is going to cry 12) won't tell
2) am going to 8) does our bus 13) are having,
make leave Will you come
3) am playing 9) will post 14) is going to
4) will take 10) are flying listen
5) are you doing 11) am going to 15) will be sitting
6) will pass read

11.2.

- 1) will 6) starts
2) be passing 7) am going to
3) are you going to 8) will
4) will help 9) am going to
5) is going to 10) will

12.1.

- 1) will have been learning 6) will have prepared
2) will have finished 7) will have saved
3) will have bought 8) will have been learning
4) will have been working 9) will have been living
5) will have been 10) will have left

TEST 6

- 1) B) 6) C) 11) A) 16) D)
2) D) 7) B) 12) C) 17) D)
3) B) 8) D) 13) B) 18) C)
4) C) 9) B) 14) D) 19) C)
5) A) 10) D) 15) A) 20) B)

13.1.

- 1) is there 8) shall we 15) would you
2) was it 9) do you 16) are they
3) will you 10) has he 17) don't you
4) aren't I 11) didn't I 18) should she
5) did they 12) hasn't she 19) doesn't he
6) haven't you 13) need he 20) don't we
7) will you 14) will they

14.1.

- 1) am thinking 6) tastes
2) smells 7) is seeing
3) feel 8) is she smelling
4) is having 9) don't think, is thinking
5) need, am thinking 10) smells, tastes

15.1.

- 1) meeting 7) smoking
2) flying, going 8) standing, sitting
3) getting 9) stealing, taking/
4) being /taking, stealing
5) having to 10) swimming
6) eating

15.2.

- 1) for being 6) on paying
2) on passing 7) from going
3) from leaving 8) for asking
4) of being 9) of not being
5) of stealing 10) to seeing

15.3.

- | | |
|---------------------------|-----------------|
| 1) cleaning/to be cleaned | 6) skiing |
| 2) laughing | 7) (to) move |
| 3) telling/having told | 8) to announce |
| 4) to call | 9) locking |
| 5) working | 10) windsurfing |

15.4.

- | | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|--------|
| 1) C) | 2) H) | 3) D) | 4) I) | 5) E) |
| 6) A) | 7) G) | 8) F) | 9) J) | 10) B) |

15.5.

- 1) Having said all he wanted, he left without saying goodbye.
- 2) It has stopped raining and started snowing.
- 3) She forgot lending/having lent me money.
- 4) I remember shutting/having shut the window. It's no use going back.
- 5) Would you mind turning the radio down?
- 6) They suspect him of taking drugs.
- 7) I look forward to seeing you soon.
- 8) Excuse me for being late.
- 9) I can't stand being told what to do.
- 10) Our flat needs decorating/to be decorated.

16.1.

- | | |
|------------------|------------------------|
| 1) makes, feel | 6) 'd better not leave |
| 2) let, do | 7) didn't hear, come |
| 3) made, cry | 8) lets, talk |
| 4) make, do | 9) 'd rather not tell |
| 5) made, to open | 10) made to speak |

16.2.

- 1) She seems to be leaving.
- 2) The company seems to have had a pre tax profit of 10 million pounds.
- 3) Ben seems to have lost his wallet on the bus.
- 4) They seemed not to have heard it before.
- 5) Suzy seems to have a lot of friends.

16.3.

- 1) He is known to be a good singer.
- 2) They are expected to do it tomorrow.
- 3) She is believed not to have done it.
- 4) Four people were announced to have been killed in the storm.
- 5) His latest book is supposed to be very good.

16.4.

- 1) She is easy to be with.
- 2) They are likely to come tomorrow.
- 3) He was believed to have done it.

- 4) They are difficult to live with.
- 5) James is said to be staying with Ruth.
- 6) They are known to have had problems with money last year.
- 7) It is thought to have happened many years ago.
- 8) She is unlikely to come.
- 9) He seems to be leaving.
- 10) The water is safe to drink.
- 11) They seemed to have had a perfect holiday.
- 12) Jane is sure to pass the exam.
- 13) He is impossible to talk to now.
- 14) The company seems to have lost a lot of money last year.
- 15) Three people are reported to have been killed in the accident.

16.5.

- 1) I want them to understand it.
- 2) They asked her to excuse them.
- 3) Why are you telling me not to do it?
- 4) Do you expect him/her to be back by Saturday?
- 5) They ordered us not to leave the room.
- 6) I don't want them to know it.
- 7) We didn't expect it to be so far.
- 8) Would you like us to stay here with you?
- 9) They invited us to join them.
- 10) Did they really want you to do it?

17.1.

- 1) It can be seen everywhere.
- 2) Our house was decorated last month.
- 3) This matter will never be discussed.
- 4) These photos were taken in Greece.
- 5) This work won't have been finished by Monday.
- 6) Has the house been left unlocked?
- 7) A very important problem is being discussed at the moment.
- 8) English is spoken here.
- 9) He will never be forgotten.
- 10) The Prime Minister has been shot.

17.2.

- 1) Our house is looked after by Mrs Black when we are abroad.
- 2) That accident hasn't been spoken about yet.
- 3) Mr Smith was sent for.
- 4) This matter will be dealt with soon.
- 5) I don't like being shouted at.

17.3.

- 1) I always have my flat cleaned.
- 2) Joyce had her wallet stolen yesterday.

- 3) We have just had the heating repaired.
- 4) I am having my car serviced at the moment.
- 5) She never has her hair cut.

17.4.

- 1) He was sent an important letter.
- 2) She has been shown how to do it.
- 3) You will be told about it soon.
- 4) I was asked to wait.
- 5) The employees are paid weekly.
- 6) Sam was offered the job.
- 7) The children are taught to count.
- 8) We haven't been told yet.
- 9) The police was/were asked for help.
- 10) How much will you be paid?

TEST 7

- | | | | |
|-------|--------|--------|--------|
| 1) D) | 6) D) | 11) A) | 16) B) |
| 2) B) | 7) C) | 12) B) | 17) A) |
| 3) A) | 8) A) | 13) C) | 18) D) |
| 4) C) | 9) A) | 14) A) | 19) D) |
| 5) D) | 10) D) | 15) C) | 20) A) |

18.1.

- 1) Don't close it.
- 2) Let's not leave.
- 3) Don't shout.
- 4) Don't worry.
- 5) Don't open the window.
- 6) Don't stand up.
- 7) Don't let him say things like that.
- 8) Don't let the children talk to strangers.
- 9) Don't touch it.
- 10) Don't let him take advantage of you like that.

19.1.

- | | | |
|------------|------------|-------------|
| 1) making | 10) make | 18) made/ |
| 2) making | 11) do | /have made |
| 3) made | 12) make | 19) do |
| 4) made | 13) making | 20) done |
| 5) do | 14) made | 21) (to) do |
| 6) make | 15) do | 22) made |
| 7) to make | 16) done | 23) makes |
| 8) Make | 17) make | 24) make |
| 9) making | | 25) make |

20.1.

- | | | |
|----------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1) happily | 6) logically | 11) publicly |
| 2) cheerfully | 7) lazily | 12) usually |
| 3) quietly | 8) straight | 13) fast |
| 4) incredibly | 9) wholly | 14) simply |
| 5) financially | 10) truly | 15) heavily |

20.2.

- | | |
|-------------------|----------------|
| 1) hardly, nearly | 6) highly |
| 2) high | 7) nearly |
| 3) lately | 8) near |
| 4) deeply | 9) hardly |
| 5) hard | 10) good, well |

20.3.

- | | |
|-----------------------|------------------------|
| 1) enough glasses | 6) enough eggs |
| 2) old enough | 7) big enough |
| 3) rich enough | 8) enough dictionaries |
| 4) experienced enough | 9) strong enough |
| 5) fast enough | 10) enough room |

20.4.

- | | | |
|-----------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| 1) fast | faster | fastest |
| 2) slowly | more slowly | most slowly |
| 3) far | farther/further | farthest/farthest |
| 4) early | earlier | earliest |
| 5) quickly | more quickly | most quickly |
| 6) late | later | latest |
| 7) often | more often | most often |
| 8) badly | worse | worst |
| 9) successfully | more successfully | most successfully |
| 10) little | less | least |

21.1.

- | | | |
|------------|------------|----------|
| 1) within | 5) between | 9) since |
| 2) except | 6) off | 10) into |
| 3) towards | 7) by | |
| 4) during | 8) across | |

21.2.

- | | | |
|---------|-----------|-----------------|
| 1) over | 5) to | 9) on behalf of |
| 2) from | 6) out of | 10) for |
| 3) of | 7) of | |
| 4) at | 8) in | |

21.3.

- | | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|--------|
| 1) on | 2) in | 3) at | 4) at | 5) at |
| 6) in | 7) at | 8) in | 9) at | 10) in |

21.4.

- | | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|------------|
| 1) on | 2) at | 3) in | 4) at | 5) in |
| 6) at | 7) in | 8) At | 9) on | 10) at, in |

TEST 8

- | | | | |
|-------|--------|--------|--------|
| 1) B) | 6) C) | 11) B) | 16) C) |
| 2) D) | 7) A) | 12) D) | 17) C) |
| 3) A) | 8) C) | 13) A) | 18) B) |
| 4) B) | 9) D) | 14) B) | 19) C) |
| 5) C) | 10) A) | 15) C) | 20) D) |

22.1.

- 1) We saw the film at the cinema last night.
- 2) They spoke about it at school a week ago.
- 3) Let's meet at 5 tomorrow.
- 4) He closed the door quietly.
- 5) It will be announced at the staff meeting next Monday.
- 6) We called our friends immediately after breakfast.
- 7) You have met him at school today.
- 8) Jack goes to work by car every day.
- 9) Let's go shopping to the supermarket in the evening.
- 10) I think all students will speak English fluently.

22.2.

- | | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|--------|
| 1) B) | 2) A) | 3) B) | 4) A) | 5) B) |
| 6) B) | 7) B) | 8) A) | 9) A) | 10) B) |

22.3.

- 1) You never say you will always love me.
- 2) He can never remember names. He must always write them down.
- 3) We don't usually go out after dinner.
- 4) He will often travel abroad.
- 5) Do you ever go to bed before midnight?
- 6) She is usually tired when she gets home.
- 7) It often rains in winter there.
- 8) He seldom has a shower.
- 9) They will never understand it.
- 10) Joe is always drinking beer.

22.4.

- | | |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| 1) Were there | 6) There has been |
| 2) There was/is | 7) Is there |
| 3) Will there be | 8) There have been |
| 4) There have been | 9) Will there be |
| 5) There was | 10) There are |

22.5.

- | | |
|-----------------|------------------|
| 1) So is | 6) Neither have |
| 2) Neither does | 7) So did |
| 3) So will | 8) Neither could |
| 4) Neither did | 9) So are |
| 5) Neither can | 10) So would |

23.1.

- 1) Is Paul working today?
- 2) Can Peter speak English?
- 3) Have they gone?
- 4) Did Fiona have a birthday yesterday?
- 5) Will you be there on time?
- 6) Were they dancing at 6 yesterday?
- 7) Will you be lying on the beach this time tomorrow?
- 8) Does he do it?

- 9) Had they finished it before they left?
- 10) Does it often snow in England?

23.2.

- 1) Where are you flying next week?
- 2) When do you go to Italy?
- 3) How many languages does Pam speak?
- 4) What were they cooking?
- 5) Why does Tom love Lucy?
- 6) What was Suzy wearing?
- 7) When/How often did he wear a suit?
- 8) Who does Jack want to speak to?
- 9) How often do you go to the cinema?
- 10) How many children do they have?
- 11) When did they get married?
- 12) How is she going to work today?
- 13) Where is he from?
- 14) Whose car is it?
- 15) What were you talking about?
- 16) Who is Tim looking at?
- 17) How long have you been waiting here?
- 18) How many times did they change?
- 19) How much sugar does he need?
- 20) How old is she?
- 21) What was the weather like?
- 22) Who will they go there with?
- 23) When was it announced?
- 24) How do you get/go to work?
- 25) Where did it happen?
- 26) Which car do you prefer?
- 27) What was she looking for?
- 28) What films do you like watching?
- 29) How long did it take you to get to London?
- 30) What does your sister look like?
- 31) How long will they be able to stay there?
- 32) How many cigarettes a day does Pat smoke?
- 33) What lorry is there in front of the house?
- 34) Why did they do it?
- 35) Who did Molly say it to?
- 36) How long had Susan been working for this company when she retired?
- 37) Who did Jack and Jill have to speak English with?
- 38) When will Tom be allowed to drive a car?
- 39) How many times has Brigit been to Scotland?
- 40) What time does physics start?

23.3.

- 1) Don't you like her?
- 2) Didn't you meet him at the party last week?
- 3) Isn't she interested in music?
- 4) Don't you have your own?
- 5) Hasn't James done it?

23.4.

- 1) Who saw Fiona?
- 2) Who did James see?
- 3) What has Paul got?
- 4) What did the Smiths have last night?
- 5) Who lost the key?
- 6) Who did Frank phone?
- 7) Who won a million?
- 8) Who loves Eve?
- 9) Who has bought a new car?
- 10) What did the children break?
- 11) Who agrees with their decision?
- 12) Who does Jeremy agree with?
- 13) Who were the boys talking about?
- 14) Who got lost?
- 15) Who did Alan marry?

23.5.

- 1) Ask her if she is reading a newspaper.
- 2) I don't know if they have ever been to Moscow.
- 3) I don't remember when I first met my wife.
- 4) Can you tell me how much this skirt costs?
- 5) Have you any idea where the children are?
- 6) I don't remember when the bus leaves.
- 7) Do you know what time the post office opens?
- 8) Tell me if it is true.
- 9) Please explain why you did it.
- 10) Do you know if they broke up?
- 11) Do you know how much the holiday will cost?
- 12) They will be wondering where you are.
- 13) Tell me where Val works.
- 14) I don't remember what they were talking about.
- 15) Who knows if they are still together.

24.1.

- | | |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| 1) unreliable | 11) illogical |
| 2) non-believer | 12) unnatural |
| 3) irresistible | 13) improbable |
| 4) unbelievable | 14) irregular |
| 5) impolite | 15) non-existent |
| 6) inexpensive | 16) dishonest |
| 7) immoral | 17) inexhaustible |
| 8) non-addictive | 18) illegible |
| 9) disapprove | 19) untie |
| 10) inexperienced | 20) incomplete |

24.2.

- | | | |
|------------------|------------------|----------------|
| 1) decapitate | 6) deforest | 11) non-profit |
| 2) enlarge | 7) non-flammable | 12) enslave |
| 3) biped | 8) reopen | 13) misuse |
| 4) misunderstand | 9) underage | 14) bilingual |
| 5) biannual | 10) overestimate | 15) enable |

25.1.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------|
| 1) approval | 16) improvement |
| 2) separation | 17) attendance |
| 3) loneliness | 18) removal |
| 4) depth | 19) brotherhood |
| 5) suggestion | 20) difference |
| 6) kingdom | 21) wisdom |
| 7) employee, employer, employment | 22) entrance |
| 8) refusal | 23) kindness |
| 9) weakness | 24) visibility |
| 10) width | 25) length |
| 11) meaning | 26) admiration |
| 12) freedom | 27) stupidity |
| 13) friendship | 28) election |
| 14) assumption | 29) silence |
| 15) strength | 30) accuracy |

25.2.

- | | |
|----------------|-----------------------|
| 1) spiky | 11) smelly |
| 2) childish | 12) cowardly |
| 3) angry | 13) ambitious |
| 4) heavenly | 14) political |
| 5) dangerous | 15) forgetful |
| 6) famous | 16) acceptable |
| 7) friendly | 17) foolish |
| 8) endless | 18) bony |
| 9) courageous | 19) lovely |
| 10) occasional | 20) careless, careful |

25.3.

- | | |
|--------------|---------------|
| 1) tighten | 6) authorise |
| 2) memorise | 7) strengthen |
| 3) shorten | 8) justify |
| 4) simplify | 9) summarise |
| 5) economise | 10) brighten |

26.1.

- | | |
|----------------|----------------|
| 1) in spite of | 6) First |
| 2) although | 7) in spite of |
| 3) At first | 8) Although |
| 4) because of | 9) because of |
| 5) because | 10) At first |

TEST 9

- | | | | |
|-------|--------|--------|--------|
| 1) C) | 6) A) | 11) D) | 16) C) |
| 2) D | 7) C) | 12) C) | 17) A) |
| 3) A) | 8) C) | 13) A) | 18) B) |
| 4) D) | 9) B) | 14) C) | 19) D) |
| 5) A) | 10) C) | 15) D) | 20) B) |

27.1.

- 1) do, will have to
- 2) won't come, aren't
- 3) will do, gets
- 4) meets, will go
- 5) will never understand, don't listen
- 6) will miss, doesn't hurry
- 7) will be, fails
- 8) will change, is
- 9) don't feel, will stay
- 10) is, will be
- 11) stops, will go
- 12) eat, will be
- 13) will go, go
- 14) will help, ask
- 15) isn't, will start

27.2.

- 1) I won't go out tonight in case Jack rings.
- 2) I won't go for a walk if it rains.
- 3) You should take a map in case you get lost.
- 4) I'll give you a ring if I get lost.
- 5) They are going to install a smoke alarm in case there is a fire.
- 6) You should go to the lost property if you lose your luggage.
- 7) I will attach a label with my address to my luggage in case I lose it.
- 8) Hold on, I'll withdraw some money from the cash machine in case we need it.
- 9) I will withdraw some money from my account if there is some.
- 10) I will arrange travel insurance in case I get sick in Italy.

27.3.

- | | |
|-----------|------------|
| 1) UNLESS | 6) UNLESS |
| 2) UNLESS | 7) UNLESS |
| 3) IF | 8) IF |
| 4) IF | 9) UNLESS |
| 5) IF | 10) UNLESS |

27.4.

- 1) If I wasn't/weren't so busy, I would go out more often.
- 2) If this car wasn't/weren't so expensive, I would buy it.
- 3) If it wasn't/weren't raining, we could go for a walk.
- 4) If it wasn't/weren't serious, I wouldn't bother you.
- 5) If Paul didn't work shifts, he wouldn't be tired.
- 6) If we had enough money, we could buy a new camera.
- 7) If Fiona didn't have to do the same things every day, she wouldn't be fed up with her job.
- 8) If I knew it, I wouldn't be asking/ask.

- 9) If the Cunninghams didn't work in the city, they wouldn't live there.
- 10) If there was/were something interesting on, I would watch TV.

27.5.

- 1) If Fred hadn't missed the bus, he wouldn't have been late for school.
- 2) If the road hadn't been wet and slippery, the accident wouldn't have happened.
- 3) If they had had a map, they wouldn't have got lost.
- 4) If mum had been at home, she would have prepared lunch.
- 5) If James hadn't got drunk, he wouldn't have lost his key last night.
- 6) If I had been told, I would have done it.
- 7) If the boss hadn't shouted at her, she wouldn't have got upset.
- 8) If the man had spoken English, Peter would have understood.
- 9) If I had had a camera, I would have taken photos.
- 10) If there had been some people, somebody would have called the ambulance.

27.6.

- 1) hadn't been, wouldn't be
- 2) would understand, wouldn't have skipped
- 3) hadn't eaten, wouldn't be
- 4) wouldn't be starving, had had
- 5) hadn't left, wouldn't have to

27.7.

- 1) forgot, would be
- 2) misses, will have to
- 3) had gone, wouldn't be
- 4) had told me, would have gone
- 5) won't help, asks
- 6) was/were, would
- 7) would have taken, had had
- 8) see, will you
- 9) would do, won
- 10) was/were, wouldn't do

28.1.

- 1) I will wash the dishes before I read the newspaper.
- 2) Jane is going to travel after she leaves school.
- 3) John will be cooking while Lucy is sleeping.
- 4) We will visit Jack when we are in the USA.
- 5) I won't do the same next time it happens.
- 6) I will tell you something as soon as he leaves.
- 7) They will be waiting here until you bring it.
- 8) You can leave after you finish/have finished it.

- 9) We will turn off the light before we go to bed.
- 10) I won't enter the room until you are there.

28.2.

- 1) We are leaving for London next week. When we are there, we will see the Tower.
- 2) I may see Jim next week. If I see him, I will ask him about it.
- 3) I might be late this evening. If I am, don't wait for me.
- 4) They are going on holiday. When they come back, they will let you know.
- 5) I want you to join us, but if you don't want to, you needn't.

29.1

- 1) I wish I wasn't/weren't sick.
- 2) Jack wishes he didn't have to get up early.
- 3) If only you were allowed to smoke in here.
- 4) If only Lucy could speak French.
- 5) If only you would stop talking.
- 6) They wish they didn't live in a big city.
- 7) If only Jack didn't know it.
- 8) If only Mr Smith could do it.
- 9) I wish Sam would call me.
- 10) If only I could move.

29.2.

- 1) If only you had helped me.
- 2) If only they weren't at work.
- 3) He wishes he hadn't drunk so much last night.
- 4) If only we hadn't left our luggage unattended.
- 5) If only it would stop snowing. If only it wasn't/weren't snowing.
- 6) If only my wife wasn't/weren't angry with me.
- 7) If only they hadn't been late.
- 8) I wish I hadn't made him change his mind.
- 9) If only the car would start.
- 10) If only we had been told about it in time.

30.1.

- 1) I met an interesting girl whose phone number I don't remember.
- 2) The man who answered the phone didn't tell me his name.
- 3) Jane has a dog whose name is Spotty.
- 4) The town where/in which Jack was born is small.
- 5) The boy who is standing in front of our house looks like my cousin.
- 6) Paul works in a factory that/which produces tractors.
- 7) Alexander Flemming was a scientist who discovered penicillin.

- 8) A vacuum cleaner is a machine that/which cleans carpets.
- 9) I heard a song whose words I can't remember.
- 10) The house that/which was damaged by floods has just been rebuilt.

30.2.

- 1) The miniskirt Suzy was wearing was bright pink.
- 2) The book he is reading is a novel.
- 3) The people I meet in my job are strange.
- 4) What is the name of the restaurant we had dinner in?
- 5) The people Jane was on holiday with are her colleagues.
- 6) Do you know the boy who is waiting for you?
- 7) Mr Harris finally got the job he was trained for.
- 8) Have you found the key you lost last night?
- 9) Where is the bottle of Irish whiskey I bought a week ago?
- 10) The beautiful girl John is going out with used to be my wife.

30.3.

- 1) Paris, which is the capital of France, lies on the River Seine.
- 2) Claire White, who lives on the same floor as me, is an interpreter.
- 3) The woman who lives on the same floor as me never goes out.
- 4) The sunglasses my father is looking for are lying on the table.
- 5) Jeremy Smith, who is Sophia's friend, is a lawyer.
- 6) We looked up the Moon, which was bright that night.
- 7) Have you seen the girl John is talking to before?
- 8) We were in the Brave Lion Pub, which Ben recommended to us.
- 9) We asked a policeman who was standing nearby for help.
- 10) The Prime Minister, who was only 50, was shot down.

30.4.

- 1) They couldn't go with us, which was a pity.
- 2) I didn't catch what he said.
- 3) The sun was shining all day long, which we didn't expect.
- 4) Judith passed the exam, which surprised me.
- 5) Give the boys what they want.
- 6) He says he is busy, which means he is going to stay at work overnight.
- 7) What you did was right.
- 8) James helped me, which was nice of him.
- 9) You are not responsible for what happened last week.
- 10) Does anybody know what we are living for?

30.5.

- 1) I have three daughters, all of whom are students.
- 2) Peter wrote two letters, neither of which he posted.
- 3) Jill inherited one million dollars, half of which she gave to charity.
- 4) Ten students took the exam, none of whom passed.
- 5) There are several cars at the crossroads, none of which is faster than mine.

31.1.

- 1) I went to the hairdresser to have a new haircut.
- 2) She was on holiday in Greece to relax.
- 3) We are waiting here to talk to Tom.
- 4) He smokes to calm down.
- 5) They are going to Stockholm to practise their Swedish.
- 6) John is saving money to buy a motorbike.
- 7) I take karate lessons to defend myself.
- 8) Jane put on a sweater to keep warm.
- 9) Kevin goes to so many parties to find a girlfriend.
- 10) I am wearing these glasses to see you.

31.2.

- 1) He is learning French so that he can read books in French.
- 2) I bought the red paint so that I could paint the door red.
- 3) They hid behind the tree so that nobody could see them.
- 4) We are saving money so that we can travel round the world next year.
- 5) He is whispering so that he won't wake up the baby.
- 6) The guide spoke slowly and clearly so that everybody could/would understand.
- 7) Will you have a look at my hairdryer so that I can use it?
- 8) Jim took extra driving lessons so that he could drive a car.
- 9) Lucas lent me his glasses so that I could read the message.
- 10) Mel put on a strange coat so that nobody would recognise her.

32.1.

- 1) Jack told us (that) they were still standing there.
- 2) Fiona said (that) Mr Knight had left his wife.
- 3) Julia told me (that) she had never seen it before.
- 4) Peter asked the Parkers if they would go on holiday without their children.
- 5) She said (that) she was going to travel after she finished school.
- 6) They informed us (that) they were leaving on Tuesday.
- 7) They promised (that) if they saw him, they would tell him about it.

- 8) She told him (that) she didn't smoke any more.
- 9) They said (that) they would be there on time.
- 10) He informed them (that) he had almost finished it.
- 11) Kim told me (that) she had never been to Japan.
- 12) She said (that) she was sure he would be late again.
- 13) They said they had been learning English for ages.
- 14) They hoped (that) it would be better.
- 15) They told us (that) she might come with them.

32.2.

- 1) Jim said (that) he didn't know that girl.
- 2) They promised (that) they would do it the next day/the following day.
- 3) Hannah told me (that) she had lost her passport the day before/the previous day.
- 4) They said (that) they didn't like those buildings.
- 5) He told his wife (that) he was working that day.
- 6) He told me (that) it was there.
- 7) They informed their friends (that) they would arrive the next week/the following week.
- 8) I told them (that) I would wait there until they asked me to leave.
- 9) They said (that) they hadn't been there the week before/the previous week, but they had been there three weeks before.
- 10) The children told their parents (that) they were going to the disco that night.

32.3.

- 1) John asked me where I had met my husband.
- 2) I didn't want to ask them why they were leaving.
- 3) The question was what I was/we were going to do about it.
- 4) No-one knew if he could speak Spanish.
- 5) He doubted if Jane had ever said anything interesting.
- 6) The woman asked the man if he was interested in classical music.
- 7) They asked Luca s if he went to work by car.
- 8) She asked him if he liked horror films.
- 9) They wanted to know when I we would be back.
- 10) Their colleagues asked them if they had been on holiday in Spain or on Greece.

TEST 10

- | | | | |
|-------|--------|--------|--------|
| 1) C) | 6) A) | 11) D) | 16) B) |
| 2) D) | 7) D) | 12) B) | 17) B) |
| 3) B) | 8) B) | 13) C) | 18) C) |
| 4) A) | 9) C) | 14) A) | 19) B) |
| 5) D) | 10) D) | 15) D) | 20) D) |



Iva Dostálová
Angličtina – gramatika

Prvý raz vydalo v roku 2007 Nakladatelství Fragment, Radiová 1122/1, Praha 10
Copyright © Fragment 2007
Text © Iva Dostálová 2007
ISBN 978-80-253-0192-0 (Nakladatelství Fragment)

Z českého originálu *Angličtina v kostce pro SŠ – Gramatika* preložila Tatiana Laliková
Grafický návrh obálky Nakladatelství FRAGMENT, s. r. o., Kamila Flonerová
Redakčná a jazyková úprava Bronislava Chocholová
Ilustrácie Pavel Kantorek
Zodpovedná redaktorka Lenka Macková
Technická redaktorka Daruše Singerová
Vydalo Vydavateľstvo Fragment, s. r. o., Bratislava ako svoju 408. publikáciu
1. vydanie, 2009
Sadzbu zhotovilo Nakladatelství FRAGMENT, s. r. o.

Slovenské vydanie © Vydavateľstvo Fragment, s. r. o. 2009
Translation © Tatiana Laliková 2009
Illustrations © Pavel Kantorek 2009
Cover © Nakladatelství FRAGMENT, s. r. o., Kamila Flonerová 2009

Všetky práva sú vyhradené. Nijaká časť tejto publikácie sa nesmie rozširovať
bez písomného súhlasu majiteľov práv.

Kontaktná adresa:
Kominárska 2, 4, 831 04 Bratislava 3
e-mail: fragment@fragment.sk
<http://www.fragment.sk>

ISBN 978-80-8089-311-8

